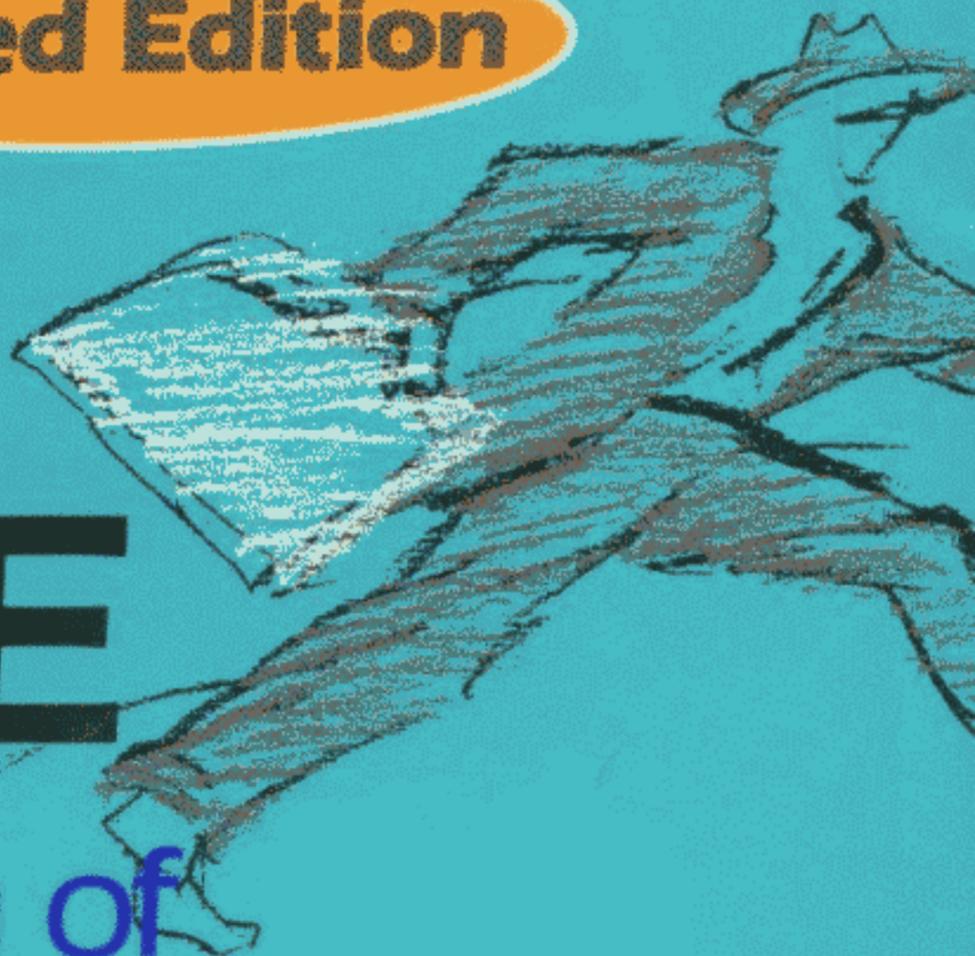


# JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE

Revised Edition



The new version of  
the most effective course of  
spoken, everyday Japanese

I

Association for Japanese-Language Teaching

# JAPANESE FOR **Revised Edition** BUSY PEOPLE

I

Association for Japanese-Language Teaching



KODANSHA INTERNATIONAL  
Tokyo • New York • London

# CONTENTS

Prerface to the Revised Edition	7
Introduction	8
Acknowledgments	10
Writing and Pronunciation	11
Characteristics of Japanese Grammar	14
Useful Daily Expressions	15
Signs in Daily Life	16
Lesson 1: Introductions	19
Lesson 2: Address and Telephone Number	25
Lesson 3: Day and Time	31
Lesson 4: How Much?	38
Lesson 5: Counting Objects	44
Lesson 6: Going and Coming	52
Lesson 7: Going by Taxi	60
Lesson 8: Existence of People and Things	65
Lesson 9: Place, Location	72
Lesson 10: Tickets Bought	78
Lesson 11: Reading Review	85
Lesson 12: Telephoning	87
Lesson 13: Delicious Cakes	94
Lesson 14: Yesterday's Enjoyable Kabuki	103
Lesson 15: Giving and Receiving	108
Lesson 16: Asking Preferences	113

Lesson 17: Invitation to a Party	119
Lesson 18: Ownership and Events	123
Lesson 19: Doing This and That	129
Lesson 20: Requests and Orders	136
Lesson 21: Having Things Done	141
Lesson 22: Public Transportation	144
Lesson 23: Asking Permission	149
Lesson 24: Refusal	154
Lesson 25: Now in Progress	158
Lesson 26: Reading Review	163
Lesson 27: Present Condition	167
Lesson 28: Expressing Preferences	173
Lesson 29: Dining Out	182
Lesson 30: Reading Review	187

## Appendices

A. Particles	191
B. Interrogatives	193
C. Sentence Patterns	194
D. Adjectives	195
E. Verb Conjugations	196
F. <b>Ko-so-a-do</b>	199
G. Country, Nationality, Language	200
H. Common Japanese Names	200
I. Counters	200
J. Extent, Frequency, Quantity	201
K. Time Expressions	202
L. Parts of the Face and Body	204
M. Kanji	204
Quiz Answers	206
Japanese-English Glossary	211
English-Japanese Glossary	219
Index	226

## PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

When *Japanese for Busy People I* was first published in 1984, followed by *Japanese for Busy People II* in 1990, we little expected the overwhelming success that these books have enjoyed, not only within Japan but among students and teachers the world over. In preparing this revised edition, we have taken into account the responses and comments of both students and teachers who have used the course.

The revisions to Book I are minor in nature, and mainly consist of small amendments to make the grammatical explanations easier to understand, to add further explanations of points that we discovered students had difficulty with, and to increase the naturalness of practice sentences and dialogues. In addition, some new appendices have been included, listing particles, interrogatives, sentence patterns, and the *kanji* introduced in the volume.

More fundamental revisions have been made to Book II, which has been expanded and divided into two volumes, Book II and Book III. This has allowed a larger typeface to be used throughout, making it easier to read. Various other changes have been made in order to make the transition from Book I to Book II smoother, to render the introduction of new grammatical elements clearer, and to present more natural practice dialogues and sentences.

Association for Japanese-Language Teaching (AJALT)

# INTRODUCTION

*Japanese for Busy People* is for people who want to learn essential Japanese as quickly and as effectively as possible.

Preparation of this textbook is based on more than twenty years' experience of AJALT's specially trained staff in teaching beginning through advanced Japanese to students from approximately forty countries. Prior to publication, the material was reviewed and tested in the classroom with about 200 students, and revisions were made as necessary.

This course might be described as "survival Japanese," for the language learned can be put to immediate use in conversational situations. The simplistic or childish ways of expression found in most beginning texts do not occur. While vocabulary and grammar patterns have been limited to about one-third of those in the ordinary beginning text, the selection has been made after a careful study of the situations in which foreigners may have to speak Japanese. The objective is to enable the student to obtain the information he needs and to communicate what he or she wants to say in uncomplicated but *adult* language. The stress is not simply on grammatical accuracy. Careful consideration has been given to the actual linguistic patterns in Japanese communication.

To make the course effective, concise reference is made in the Notes to the linguistic customs underlying these communication patterns. The Grammar sections explain the structure and grammatical principles of Japanese whenever it is thought that such explanations would be helpful in understanding and applying the conversational patterns presented. Grammar and vocabulary are made available to the student as necessary, but he is not overburdened by having to learn excessive amounts of either for some undefined future contingency.

Although this is an introductory text, it does provide a solid foundation for the study of Japanese at a higher level. Every student should be able to obtain a good grasp of just what *kind of language* Japanese is while learning the basic conversational patterns. Because of this, it should be of value not only to people who are approaching Japanese for the first time but also a good review for people who already know a little Japanese but wish to confirm whether they are using the phrases they know in the right situations.

The amount of time needed to complete this course will naturally vary, depending on the individual. In AJALT classes, which meet for two and a half hours a day, five days a week, the course takes four weeks, or a total of about fifty hours. In addition, two to three hours a day are needed for preparation and review.

## Arrangement of the Book

Basic guides to writing, pronunciation and grammar are presented in the immediately following sections, after which come Useful Daily Expressions and Signs in

Daily Life. The main text is divided into thirty lessons. At the end of the book are the Appendices, Quiz Answers, Glossaries and Index. Nearly all of the lessons deal with conversational situations. These are supplemented by four reading and review lessons.

The two modes of communication, oral and written, are different. In a conversational situation, speaker and listener share a good deal of information. In a natural conversation, much of this information is omitted and the speakers are able to communicate in a rather elliptical fashion. In a story, a report or a letter, however, it is necessary to write an organized, well-structured composition in order to communicate all the information needed in a logical fashion. In our experience, the student can learn Japanese most effectively if he studies both conversation and written Japanese from the very beginning.

This is one reason for the short review lessons. From Lesson 3, Summary Sentences (marked by ·) in Japanese and English follow the Opening Dialogue or Text. These sentences also show the differences between the oral and written languages. In addition, besides a title for ready reference, most lessons have at the beginning a Topic Sentence in English to orient the student to the main situation in the lesson. These should be of special value when teaching students for whom English is a second language.

Lessons are generally based on a particular conversational situation, such as shopping, talking on the telephone, and so on. Strategically placed throughout the book are ten Grammar sections to cover the most important grammar patterns. With the exception of the review lessons, each lesson has Notes, a Practice section consisting of Key Sentences, Exercises and Short Dialogue(s), and a Quiz. This arrangement will be especially helpful to people who want to study on their own.

## To the Teacher

To understand the overall plan adopted in this book, it is best to first read it from beginning to end.

Work on pronunciation is especially important at the introductory level. The sounds represented by double consonants in romanization, long vowels and the nasalized *n* sound are especially difficult for foreigners, but it is also important to help the student learn how to pronounce the five vowels correctly. Even though he has a Japanese teacher, the student should be encouraged to listen to the accompanying tapes both for basic pronunciation and for the flow of speech.

In teaching *kana*, you should consider using charts or a *kana* workbook. You should make it clear to the student that mastering *kana* will help him with pronunciation, and pronunciation should be emphasized whenever you are helping the student with *hiragana* or *katakana*. You may want to have the student learn *kana* before you begin the text. However, the text is designed so that it is quite possible to have the student work on both at the same time. He should be able to master *hiragana* by the time he reaches Lesson 10. As much as possible, class time should be devoted to actually using Japanese. The student should study the Notes and Grammar sections before class.

The Dialogues are very short and, while the practice sections are designed to reinforce the patterns introduced, the Exercises give relatively few examples. You should select additional vocabulary—for example, from the appendices—that will be of interest to the student and have him practice each pattern using these new words in order to increase the amount of oral practice. But it is best not to try for too much at one time. It is better to proceed at a steady pace, increase vocabulary gradu-

ally, and work on improving weak points after several lessons, than to introduce a lot of new vocabulary and try for perfection in each lesson. Do not allow the class to get bogged down in one lesson.

Since each lesson is based on a particular conversational situation and emphasizes specific points of grammar, the time required for each lesson is not the same. One lesson may require only one hour while another requires three hours. Adjectives, for example, are introduced in Lessons 13 and 14, and these lessons will require more time simply because of the quantity of material to be covered.

The following suggestions concern the student's preparation. Before class, he should listen to the tape of the Opening Dialogue to get a feeling for the flow of conversation between native speakers. Then he should listen to the vocabulary for each lesson while memorizing the English meanings. These two points should be the main emphasis of his preparation.

Encourage the student to review each lesson after each class meeting. At this time, it is important to insist that the student diligently memorize the Dialogues, Summary Sentences and Key Sentences.

The Quizzes may be done either in class or as homework. In either case, the teacher should check them carefully, not only to correct mistakes but also to identify individual problems and find ways to correct them.

### **Self-study**

The main parts of each lesson are printed in both *hiragana* and *katakana* and romanized Japanese (*rōmaji*). Learning will be more effective if you try to master *hiragana* by the time you are halfway through the book.

We strongly recommend that you devote sufficient time to pronunciation, accent and intonation, either by taking advantage of the tapes or by having your Japanese friends help you.

It is essential that you read the Japanese portions of the text out loud. First, take a look at the Dialogue at the beginning of the lesson. Then carefully study the Notes and the Grammar, where applicable, until you understand them completely. The Practice section gives more examples of the important patterns in the Dialogue. You should spend plenty of time repeating these patterns in a clear voice. Frequent repetition is essential. Using the appendices, you can try substituting words in each pattern while imagining situations in which you might find yourself. Remember, these patterns will only be useful if you can use them in actual situations. When you feel that you have mastered the patterns in the lesson, do the Quiz at the end. Finally, after you have completed all these steps, go back to the beginning of the lesson and thoroughly memorize the Opening Dialogue, Summary Sentences and Key Sentences.

### **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS for Book I**

Compilation of this textbook has been a cooperative endeavor, and we deeply appreciate the collective efforts and individual contributions of Mss. Sachiko Adachi, Nori Andō, Haruko Matsui, Shigeko Miyazaki, Sachiko Okaniwa, Terumi Sawada and Yuriko Yobuko. For English translations and editorial assistance, we wish to thank Ms. Dorothy Britton.

### **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS for the Revised Edition of Book I**

We would like to express our gratitude to the following people: Mss. Haruko Matsui, Junko Shinada, Keiko Ito, Mikiko Ochiai and Satoko Mizoguchi.

# WRITING AND PRONUNCIATION

There are three kinds of Japanese writing:

1. *Kanji*: Chinese characters or ideographs, each conveying an idea, most of which have at least two readings.
2. *Hiragana*: A phonetic syllabary. The symbols are curvilinear in style.
3. *Katakana*: The second syllabary used primarily for foreign names and place names and words of foreign origin. The symbols are made up of straight lines.

Written Japanese normally makes use of all three, as in the following example:

“I am going to Canada.” 私はカナダに行きます。

<i>kanji</i>	<b>Watashi</b>	私		i-	行
<i>hiragana</i>		wa	は	に	<b>kimasu</b> きます
<i>katakana</i>			<b>Kanada</b>		カナダ

Besides these three forms of writing, Japanese is sometimes written in *rōmaji* (Roman letters), particularly for the convenience of foreigners. This is generally used in teaching conversational Japanese to foreigners when time is limited. There are various systems for transliterating Japanese in the Roman alphabet. In this book we use the modified Hepburn system.

## HIRAGANA, KATAKANA AND RŌMAJI

The *kana* to the left are *hiragana*; *katakana* are in parentheses.

### I Basic Syllables: Vowel, Consonant plus vowel and n

v c	a あ (ア)	i い (イ)	u う (ウ)	e え (エ)	o お (オ)
k	ka か (カ)	ki き (キ)	ku く (ク)	ke け (ケ)	ko こ (コ)
s	sa さ (サ)	shi し (シ)	su す (ス)	se せ (セ)	so そ (ソ)
t	ta た (タ)	chi ち (チ)	tsu つ (ツ)	te て (テ)	to と (ト)
n	na な (ナ)	ni に (ニ)	nu ぬ (ヌ)	ne ね (ネ)	no の (ノ)
h	ha は (ハ)	hi ひ (ヒ)	fu ふ (フ)	he へ (ヘ)	ho ほ (ホ)
m	ma ま (マ)	mi み (ミ)	mu む (ム)	me め (メ)	mo も (モ)
y	ya や (ヤ)	[i い (イ)]	yu ゆ (ユ)	[e え (エ)]	yo よ (ヨ)
r	ra ら (ラ)	ri り (リ)	ru る (ル)	re れ (レ)	ro ろ (ロ)
w	wa わ (ワ)	[i い (イ)]	[u う (ウ)]	[e え (エ)]	o を (ヲ)
n, m	— ん (ン)				

Note: The syllables *yi*, *ye*, *wi*, *wu* and *we* do not occur in modern Japanese.

## II Modified Syllables: Consonant plus basic vowel

g	ga が (ガ)	gi ぎ (ギ)	gu ぐ (グ)	ge げ (ゲ)	go ご (ゴ)
z	za ざ (ザ)	ji じ (ジ)	zu ず (ズ)	ze ぜ (ゼ)	zo ぞ (ゾ)
d	da だ (ダ)	ji ぢ (ヂ)	zu づ (ヅ)	de で (デ)	do ど (ド)
b	ba ば (バ)	bi び (ビ)	bu ぶ (ブ)	be べ (ベ)	bo ぼ (ボ)
p	pa ぱ (パ)	pi ぴ (ピ)	pu ぷ (プ)	pe ぺ (ペ)	po ぽ (ポ)

## III Modified Syllables: Consonant plus ya, yu, yo

kya きゃ (キヤ)	kyu きゅ (キユ)	kyo きょ (キョ)
sha しゃ (シャ)	shu しゅ (シュ)	sho しょ (ショ)
cha ちゃ (チャ)	chu ちゅ (チュ)	cho ちょ (チョ)
nya にゃ (ニヤ)	nyu にゅ (ニユ)	nyo にょ (ニョ)
hya ひゃ (ヒヤ)	hyu ひゅ (ヒユ)	hyo ひょ (ヒョ)
mya みゃ (ミヤ)	myu みゅ (ミユ)	myo みょ (ミョ)
rya りゃ (リヤ)	ryu りゅ (リュ)	ryo りょ (リョ)
gya ぎゃ (ギヤ)	gyu ぎゅ (ギユ)	gyo ぎょ (ギョ)
ja じゃ (ジャ)	ju じゅ (ジュ)	jo じょ (ジョ)
bya びゃ (ビヤ)	byu びゅ (ビユ)	byo びょ (ビョ)
pya ぴゃ (ピヤ)	pyu ぴゅ (ピユ)	pyo ぴょ (ピョ)

## IV Double Consonants

kk, pp, ss, tt	っ (ツ)	(See Note 6.)
----------------	-------	---------------

## V Long Vowels

ā	ああ (アー)
ii, ī	いい (イー)
ū	うう (ウー)
ē, ei	ええ、えい (エー)
ō	おう、おお (オー)

## POINTS TO NOTE

1. The top line of the Japanese syllabary consists of the five vowels: **a, i, u, e, o**. They are short vowels, pronounced clearly and crisply. If you pronounce the vowels in the following English sentence, making them all short, you will have

their approximate sounds. The **u** is pronounced with no movement forward of the lips.

Ah, we soon get old.

**a i u e o**

2. Long vowels are written as shown in Chart V. **Ē** or **ei** is most often written えい but ええ is also sometimes encountered.  
おう is the general rule for **ō** but in some words it is traditionally written おお. Long vowels are a doubling of the single vowel and care should be taken to pronounce them as a continuous sound, equal in value to two identical short vowels.
3. The rest of the syllabary from the second line down in Chart I are syllables formed by a consonant and a vowel.
4. Japanese consonants more or less resemble English. Listen to the cassette tape or a native speaker for the exact sounds. Especially note the following: *t* in the **ta** row, *f* in the syllable **fu** and *r* in the **ra** row. The *g* in the syllables **ga**, **gi**, **gu**, **ge** and **go** at the beginning of a word is hard (like the [g] in garden), but when it occurs in the middle or in the last syllable of a word, it often becomes nasal, as in **eiga** ("movie"). The particle **ga**, too, is usually pronounced in this way. However, many Japanese today use a *g* sound which is not nasal.  
**N** is the only independent consonant not combined with a vowel. When it is at the end of a word it is pronounced somewhat nasally. Otherwise it is usually pronounced like the English [n]. But if it is followed by syllables beginning with *b*, *m* or *p*, it is pronounced more like [m] and accordingly spelled with an *m* in this textbook. Special care is necessary when syllabic **n** is followed by a vowel as in the word **kin'en**. (**ki-n-en**, "no smoking"). Note that this is different in syllable division from **kinen** (**ki-ne-n**, "anniversary").
5. As explained above, *hiragana* and *katakana* are phonetic symbols and each is one syllable in length. The syllables in Chart III which consist of two symbols—the second written smaller—are also only one syllable in length if the vowel is short, longer if the vowel is long.
6. What are written in Roman letters as the double consonants **kk**, **pp**, **ss** and **tt** in Chart IV are expressed in *kana* (*hiragana* and *katakana*) with a small **tsu** in place of the first consonant. I.e., けっこん **kekkon** ("marriage"), きっぷ **kip-pu** ("ticket"), まっすぐ **massugu** ("straight") and きて **kitte**, ("stamp"). This small っ is one syllable in length, and there is the slightest pause after it is pronounced (as in the English word *book'keeping*). In the case of the **chi** syllable, the **tsu** is represented by a *t* in Roman letters, i.e., マッチ **matchi** ("match").
7. In *hiragana*, the syllables **ji** and **zu** are written じ and ず as a general rule. In a few rare cases, they are traditionally written ぢ and づ
8. *Hiragana* follows a tradition in which the following three particles are written a special way:
  - o** when used as a particle is written を, not お.
  - e** when used as a particle is written へ, not え.
  - wa** when used as a particle is written は, not わ.

## CHARACTERISTICS OF JAPANESE GRAMMAR

The grammar in this text is derived from a natural analysis of the Japanese language, rather than being an interpretation adapted to the syntax of Western languages. We have given as few technical terms as possible, choosing ones that will make for a smooth transition from the basic level to more advanced study.

The following points are basic and in most cases reflect differences between the grammar of Japanese and that of English, or other European languages. Specific explanations and examples are given in Grammar I through Grammar X, the notes and the appendices.

1. Japanese nouns have neither gender nor number. But plurals of certain words can be expressed by the use of a suffix.
2. The verb generally comes at the end of the sentence or clause.  
*ex. **Watashi wa Nihon-jin desu.** I am a Japanese.  
**Watashi wa Kyōtō ni ikimasu.** I go to Kyoto.*
3. Verb conjugation is not affected by the gender, number or person of the subject.
4. Verb conjugation shows only two tenses, the present form and the past form. Whether use of the present form refers to habitual action or the future, and whether the past form is equivalent to the English past tense, present perfect or past perfect can be determined from the context.
5. Japanese adjectives, unlike English ones, are inflected to show present and past, affirmative and negative.
6. The grammatical function of nouns is indicated by particles. Their role is similar to English prepositions, but since they always come after the word, they are sometimes referred to as postpositions.  
*ex. **Tōkyō de,** at Tokyo  
**15-nichi ni,** on the 15 (of the month)*
7. Many degrees of politeness are expressable in Japanese. In this book the style is one which anyone may use without being rude.

Note: The following abbreviations are used in this book:

<i>aff.</i>	affirmative
<i>neg.</i>	negative
<i>Aa:</i>	Answer, affirmative
<i>An:</i>	Answer, negative
<i>ex.</i>	example
<i>-i adj.</i>	<i>-i</i> adjective
<i>-na adj.</i>	<i>-na</i> adjective

## USEFUL DAILY EXPRESSIONS

1. おはようございます。 **Ohayōgozaimasu.** Good morning! Used until about 10 A.M.
2. こんにちは。 **Konnichiwa.** Hello. A rather informal greeting used from about 10 A.M. until sundown.
- 3.こんばんは。 **Kombanwa.** Good evening.
4. さようなら。 **Sayōnara.** Good-bye. On more formal occasions one uses **Shitsurei shimasu.**
5. おやすみなさい。 **Oyasumi nasai.** Good night. Said at night before going to bed. When parting at night outside the home, **Sayōnara** is more usual.
6. では また。/じゃ また。 **Dewa mata./Ja mata.** Well then . . . Said informally when parting from relatives or friends.
7. 行ってらっしゃい。 **Itte rasshai.** So long. (*lit.* "Go and come back.") Said to members of a household as they leave the house.
8. 行ってまいります。 **Itte mairimasu.** So long. (*lit.* "[I'm] going and coming back.") This is the reply to **Itte rasshai.**
9. ただいま。 **Tadaima.** I'm back. (*lit.* "[I have returned] Just now.") Said by a person on returning home.
10. おかえりなさい。 **Okaeri nasai.** Welcome home. This is the reply to **Tadaima.**
11. おげんきですか。 **O-genki desu ka.** How are you? (*lit.* "Are you well?")
12. ありがとうございます。げんきです。 **Arigatō gozaimasu. Genki desu.** Fine, thank you.
13. おめでとうございます。 **Omedetō gozaimasu.** Congratulations!
14. おだいじに。 **O-daijini.** Take care of yourself.
15. どうも ありがとうございます。 **Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.** Thank you very much.
16. どういたしまして。 **Dō itashimashite.** You're welcome.
17. すみません。 **Sumimasen.** Excuse me. I'm sorry.
18. ちょっと まってください。 **Chotto matte kudasai.** Wait just a moment, please.
19. もう いちどおねがいします。 **Mō ichido onegaishimasu.** Once more, please.
20. おさきに。 **Osakini.** Pardon my going first (before you). Said when leaving the office or a meeting ahead of other people.
21. どうぞ おさきに。 **Dōzo osakini.** Please, go ahead.
22. きをつけて。 **Ki o tsukete.** Take care!/Be careful!
23. あぶない。 **Abunai.** Look out! (*lit.* "It's dangerous.")
24. だめです。 **Dame desu.** Out of the question./Impossible./No good.
25. がんばってください。 **Gambatte kudasai.** Keep your chin up! Said to encourage someone.

案内

annai  
Information

地下鉄  
↓

chikatetsu  
Subway, Underground

TAXI  
タクシー  
のりば

takushi-noriba  
Taxi Stand

駅

eki  
(railway) Station

きっぷうりば

kippu-uriba  
Ticket Office

改札口

kaisatsuguchi  
Ticket Gate

精算所

seisanjo  
(fare) Adjustment Office

営業中

eigyōchū  
Open

準備中

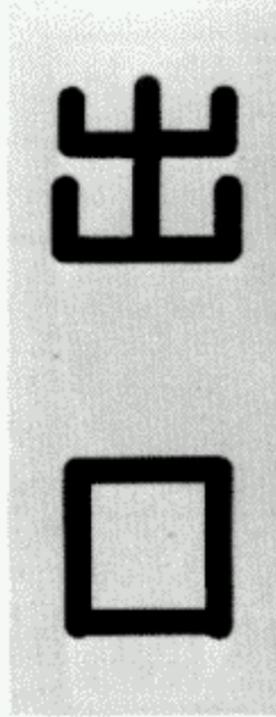
jumbichū  
Getting ready to open.  
(May also indicate  
"Closed for the day.")

休業中

kyūgyōchū  
Closed



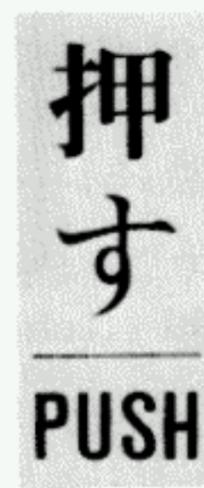
**iriguchi**  
Entrance



**deguchi**  
Exit



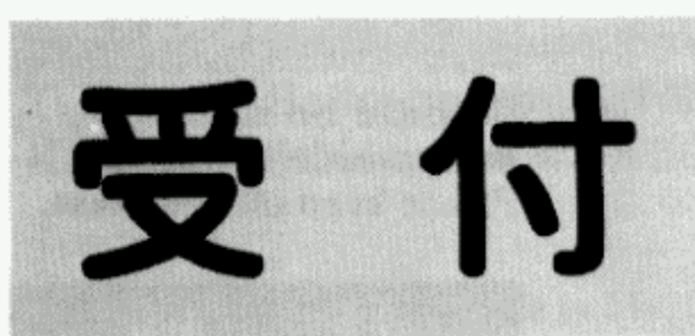
**hijōguchi**  
Emergency Exit



**osu**  
Push



**hiku**  
Pull



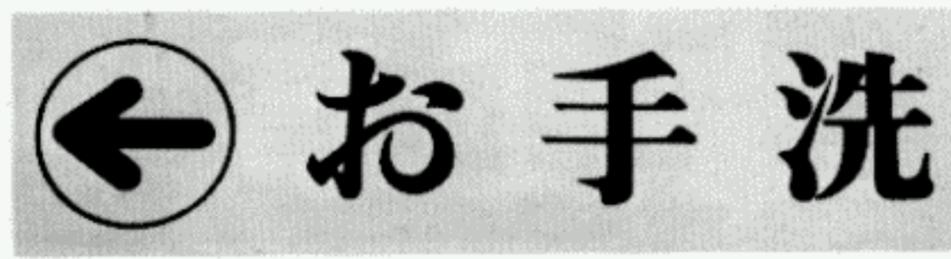
**uketsuke**  
Reception



**erebētā**  
Elevator



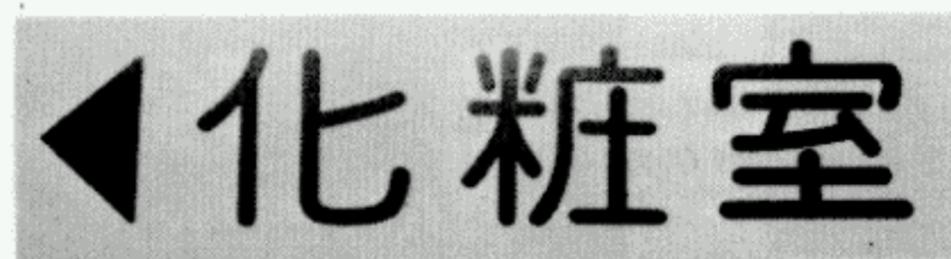
**esukarētā**  
Escalator



**o-tearai**  
Toilet



**otoko**  
Men, Gentlemen



**keshō-shitsu**  
Powder Room



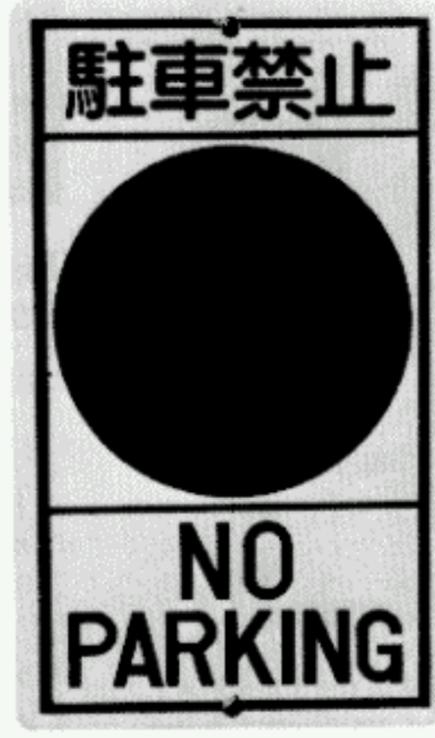
**onna**  
Women, Ladies



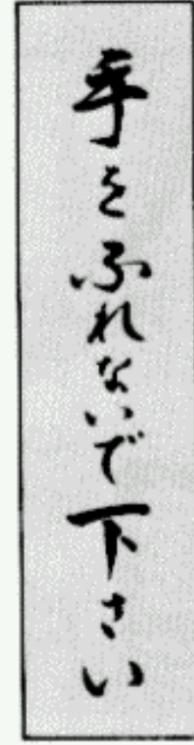
usetsu kinshi  
No right turn



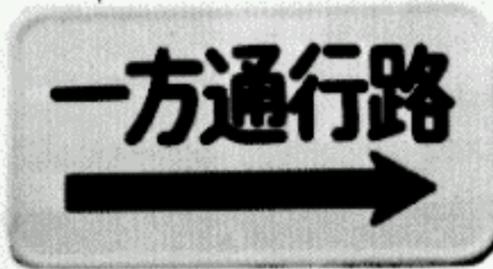
sasetsu kinshi  
No left turn



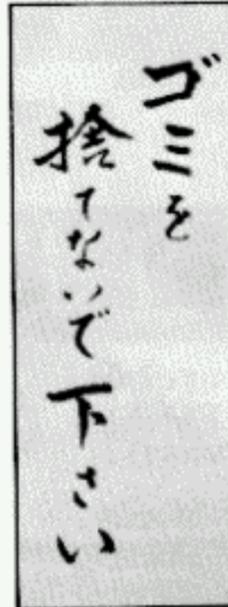
chūsha kinshi  
No Parking



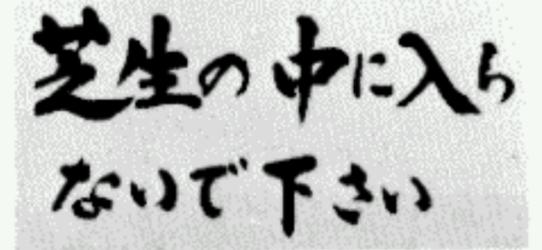
Te o furenaide  
kudasai.  
Do not touch.



ippōtsūkōro  
One Way Street



Gomi o sutenaide  
kudasai.  
Please don't litter.



Shibafu no naka ni  
hairanaide kudasai.  
Please keep off the grass.



chūshajō  
Parking lot



kin'en  
No Smoking



tachiiri kinshi  
No Admittance



chūi  
Caution!



kōjichū  
Under Construction



kiken  
Danger!

# LESSON 1 INTRODUCTIONS

## Mr. Hayashi introduces Mr. Smith to Mr. Tanaka.

はやし：たなかさん、こちらは スミスさんです。

スミス：はじめまして。スミスです。どうぞ よろしく。

たなか：はじめまして。とうきょうでんきの たなかです。

どうぞ よろしく。

はやし：スミスさんは ABCの べんごしです。

**Hayashi:** Tanaka-san, kochira wa Sumisu-san desu.

**Sumisu:** Hajimemashite. Sumisu desu. Dōzo yoroshiku.

**Tanaka:** Hajimemashite. Tōkyō Denki no Tanaka desu. Dōzo yoroshiku.

**Hayashi:** Sumisu-san wa ABC no bengoshi desu.

Hayashi: Mr. Tanaka, this is Mr. Smith.

Smith: How do you do. My name's Smith. I'm very glad to meet you.

Tanaka: How do you do. I'm Tanaka from Tokyo Electric. I'm very glad to meet you.

Hayashi: Mr. Smith is ABC's lawyer.

### Vocabulary

はやし	Hayashi	a surname
たなかさん	Tanaka-san	a surname with honorific
～さん	-san	Mr., Mrs., Ms., Miss (suffix)
こちら	kochira	this one (implies this person)
は	wa	as for (topic marker, particle)
スミス	Sumisu	Smith
です	desu	is
はじめまして	hajimemashite	How do you do.
わたし	watashi	I
どうぞ よろしく	dōzo yoroshiku	lit. Please favor me.
とうきょうでんき	Tōkyō Denki	Tokyo Electric (company name)
の	no	= 's (possessive particle)
ABC	ĒBĪSHĪ	ABC (company name)
べんごし	bengoshi	lawyer

# GRAMMAR I

---

## Lessons 1–5 Identifying People and Things

1. noun 1 **WA** noun 2 **DESU**

2. noun 1 **WA** noun 2 **DESU KA**

**Hai**, (noun 1 **wa**) noun 2 **desu**.

**Iie**, (noun 1 **wa**) noun 2 **dewa/ja arimasen**.

Present Form		Past Form	
<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
<b>desu</b>	<b>dewa arimasen</b>	<b>deshita</b>	<b>dewa arimasendeshita</b>
is	is not	was	was not

- **Particle wa.** Topic marker.

**Wa** follows noun 1 indicating that it is the topic under discussion. Noun 2 is then identified and the phrase is concluded with **desu**. The topic is often the same as the subject, but not necessarily. It is also possible for the object to be the topic. (See Note 2, p. 54; Grammar III, p. 66; Note 3, p. 183.) The . . . **wa** . . . **desu** structure is not affected by person or number.

*ex.* **A-san wa bengoshi desu.** “Mr. A is a lawyer.”

**A-san to B-san wa bengoshi desu.** “Mr. A and Mrs. B are lawyers.”

- **Particle ka.** Question marker.

The formation of questions in Japanese is easy. Put **ka** at the end of a sentence and it becomes a question. No change in word order is required even when the question contains interrogative words such as who, what, when, etc. Intonation normally rises on the particle **ka** only, i.e., . . . **desu ka.** ↗

- **Hai and Iie**

**Hai** is virtually the same as “yes.” **Iie** is virtually the same as “no.” It is better, however, to think of **hai** as meaning, “That’s right,” and **iie** as meaning, “That’s wrong.” Otherwise negative questions can be a problem. I.e., to the question, **Ja, banana ga arimasen ka,** “So you have no bananas?” the reply is **Hai, arimasen,** “That’s right, we have none.” Or **Iie, arimasu,** “That’s wrong, we have some.”

- **Omission of topic (noun 1)**

When it is obvious to the other person what the topic is, it is generally omitted.

*ex.* [**Watashi wa**] **Sumisu desu.** “(As for me) I’m Smith.”

But when it is necessary to make the topic clear, it is not omitted.

*ex.* **Kochira wa Sumisu-san desu.** “This is Mr. Smith.”

• **Dewa arimasen./Ja arimasen.**

Negative form of **desu**. **Ja** is more informal than **dewa**.

## NOTES

---

1. **Tanaka-san**

**San** is a title of respect added to a name, so it cannot be used after one's own name. **San** may be used with both male and female names, and with either surname or given name. It may even be suffixed to the name of an occupation.

*ex.* **Bengoshi-san**, "Mr. Lawyer."

2. **Kochira wa Sumisu-san desu.**

**Kochira**, "this one," implies "this person here" and is a polite way of saying "this person."

3. **Hajimemashite.**

Salutation used on meeting a person for the first time. It is a form of the verb **hajimeru**, "to begin."

4. **[Watashi wa] Sumisu desu.**

"My name's Smith." (*lit.* "I'm Smith.")

Especially in conversational Japanese, **watashi**, "I," is hardly ever used. **Anata**, "you," is similarly avoided, especially when addressing superiors, in which case the person's surname, title or occupation is used when necessary.

5. **Dōzo yoroshiku.**

A phrase used when being introduced, it is usually combined with **hajimemashite**. It is also used when taking one's leave after having asked a favor. **Yoroshiku** means "good" and is a request for the other person's favorable consideration in the future. It can also be used as follows: **Tanaka-san ni yoroshiku**. "Please give my regards to Mr. Tanaka."

6. **Tōkyō Denki no (Tanaka desu).**

The possessive particle **no** indicates ownership or attribution and comes after the noun it modifies, like "'s" in English. Here it shows that Mr. Tanaka belongs to, in the sense that he works for, Tokyo Electric. Japanese customarily give their company and position when being introduced.

7. **Dare/donata, "who?"**

The basic word for "who" is **dare**, but **donata** is more polite.

*ex.* **Kochira wa dare desu ka.** "Who is this?"

**Kochira wa donata desu ka.** "Might I ask who this is?"

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **[Watashi wa] Sumisu desu.**

2. **[Watashi wa] ABC no Sumisu desu.**

3. Kochira wa Tanaka-san desu.
4. Tanaka-san wa bengoshi dewa arimasen.

1. My name's Smith.
2. I'm Smith from ABC.
3. This is Mr. Tanaka.
4. Mr. Tanaka is not a lawyer.

## EXERCISES

---

I Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

*ex.* [Watashi wa] Sumisu desu.

1. Amerika Taishikan no Sumisu
2. Amerika-jin
3. bengoshi

II Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Sumisu-san desu ka.

A: Hai, Sumisu desu.

1. Tanaka

B. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Nihon-jin desu ka.

A: Hai, Nihon-jin desu.

A: Iie, Nihon-jin dewa arimasen.

1. bengoshi

2. hisho

C. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Nihon-jin desu ka, Chūgoku-jin desu ka.

A: Nihon-jin desu.

1. Amerika-jin, Doitsu-jin

2. gakusei, kaishain

3. bengoshi, hisho

D. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Donata desu ka.

A: Sumisu desu.

1. Tanaka

2. Amerika Taishikan no Tanaka

3. Nihon Ginkō no Tanaka

E. *ex.* Q: Kochira wa donata desu ka.

A: Sumisu-san desu.

1. Tanaka-san

2. Nihon Ginkō no Tanaka-san

## Vocabulary

<b>Amerika Taishikan</b>	American Embassy	<b>ie</b>	no
<b>Amerika</b>	America	<b>hissho</b>	secretary
<b>taishikan</b>	embassy	<b>Chūgoku-jin</b>	a Chinese
<b>Amerika-jin</b>	an American	<b>Chūgoku</b>	China
<b>-jin</b>	person (suffix)	<b>Doitsu-jin</b>	a German
<b>anata</b>	you	<b>Doitsu</b>	Germany
<b>ka</b>	=? (question marker, particle)	<b>gakusei</b>	student
<b>hai</b>	yes, certainly	<b>kaishain</b>	company employee
<b>Nihon-jin</b>	a Japanese	<b>donata</b>	who
<b>Nihon</b>	Japan	<b>Nihon Ginkō</b>	Bank of Japan
		<b>ginkō</b>	bank

## SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. **Sumisu:** Tanaka-san desu ka.

**Tanaka:** Hai, Tanaka desu.

**Sumisu:** Tanaka-san wa gakusei desu ka.

**Tanaka:** Iie, gakusei dewa arimasen. Kaishain desu.

Smith: Are you Mr. Tanaka?

Tanaka: Yes, I am.

Smith: Are you a student.

Tanaka: No, I'm not a student. I'm a company employee.

2. Mr. Hayashi introduces Miss Yamada to Mr. Tanaka.

**Hayashi:** Go-shōkai shimasu. Kochira wa Yamada-san desu. Sumisu-san no hisho desu. Kochira wa Tanaka-san desu.

**Yamada:** Hajimemashite. Yamada desu. Dōzo yoroshiku.

**Tanaka:** Hajimemashite. Tanaka desu. Dōzo yoroshiku.

Hayashi: Let me introduce you. This is Miss Yamada. She is Mr. Smith's secretary. This is Mr. Tanaka.

Yamada: How do you do. My name's Yamada. I'm very glad to meet you.

Tanaka: How do you do. My name's Tanaka. I'm very glad to meet you.

## Vocabulary

<b>go-shōkai shimasu</b>	Let me introduce you.
<b>Yamada</b>	a surname

## QUIZ ■■■■■■■■■■

I Supposing you are Mr. Smith in the opening dialogue, answer the following questions.

1. **Donata desu ka.**

**A.**

2. **Nihon-jin desu ka.**

**A.**

3. **Kaishain desu ka, bengoshi desu ka.**

**A.**

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. (        ) **desu ka.**

**Hai, Sumisu desu.**

2. **Sumisu-san wa (        ) desu ka.**

**Iie, Doitsu-jin dewa arimasen.**

3. **Sumisu-san wa (        ) desu ka, kaishain desu ka.**

**Bengoshi desu.**

4. **Kochira wa (        ) desu ka.**

**Tanaka-san desu.**

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses.

1. **Kochira (        ) Yamada-san desu.**

2. **Hayashi-san wa bengoshi desu (        ), kaishain desu (        ).**

**Kaishain desu.**

3. **Sumisu-san wa ABC (        ) bengoshi desu.**

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. I'm Smith.

2. How do you do. I'm glad to meet you.

3. Miss Yamada, this is Mr. Tanaka of Tokyo Electric.

4. Is Mr. Smith American or German?

---

LESSON **2** ADDRESS AND TELEPHONE NUMBER

---

**Mr. Tanaka gives Mr. Smith his business card. Mr. Smith cannot read *kanji*.**

たなか：わたしの めいしです。どうぞ。

スミス：どうも ありがとうございます。これは たなかさんの  
なまえですか。

たなか：ええ、そうです。たなかです。

スミス：これは？

たなか：かいしゃの なまえです。とうきょうでんきです。

スミス：これは かいしゃの でんわばんごうですか。

たなか：はい、かいしゃのです。03-3400-9031です。うちの でんわ  
ばんごうは 045-326-8871です。

**Tanaka: Watashi no meishi desu. Dōzo.**

**Sumisu: Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu. Kore wa Tanaka-san no namae desu ka.**

**Tanaka: Ee, sō desu. TA-NA-KA desu.**

**Sumisu: Kore wa?**

**Tanaka: Kaisha no namae desu. TŌ-KYŌ DEN-KI desu.**

**Sumisu: Kore wa kaisha no denwa-bangō desu ka.**

**Tanaka: Hai, kaisha no desu. Zero-san no san-yon-zero-zero no kyū-zero-san-ichi desu. Uchi no denwa-bangō wa zero-yon-go no san-ni-roku no hachi-hachi-nana-ichi desu.**

Tanaka: This is my business card. Please . . .

Smith: Thank you very much. Is this (your) name?

Tanaka: Yes. That's right. Tanaka.

Smith: And this?

Tanaka: (That's) the name of my company, Tokyo Electric.

Smith: Is this the company's telephone number?

Tanaka: Yes, it's the company's. (03) 3400-9031. (My) home telephone number is (045) 326-8871.

## Vocabulary

わたしの めいし	<b>watashi no meishi</b>	my business card ( <i>lit.</i> "name card")
どうぞ	<b>dōzo</b>	please (accept)
どうも ありがとう ございます	<b>dōmo arigatō gozaimasu</b>	Thank you very much.
どうも	<b>dōmo</b>	very much
ありがとう ございます	<b>arigatō gozaimasu</b>	(I am) grateful
これ	<b>kore</b>	this
なまえ	<b>namae</b>	name
ええ	<b>ee</b>	yes
そうです	<b>sō desu</b>	that's right
これは?	<b>kore wa?</b>	as for this?
かいしゃ	<b>kaisha</b>	company
でんわばんごう	<b>denwa-bangō</b>	telephone number
でんわ	<b>denwa</b>	telephone
ばんごう	<b>bangō</b>	number
かいしゃのです	<b>kaisha no desu</b>	It is the company's.
うち	<b>uchi</b>	home

## NOTES

---

### 1. Meishi

Japanese, particularly those in business, carry business cards which they exchange during introductions. A few hand-written words on a business card can serve as a convenient introduction.

### 2. Kore wa Tanaka-san no namae desu ka.

Note that although addressing Mr. Tanaka, Mr. Smith uses his name rather than saying **anata no**, "your." (See Note 4, p. 21.)

### 3. Ee.

"Yes." Less formal than **hai**.

### 4. Sō desu.

When replying to questions that end with **desu ka**, **sō** can be used instead of repeating the noun.

### 5. Kore wa?

A rising intonation on the particle **wa** makes this informal phrase a question without using the question marker **ka**.

### 6. Kaisha no desu.

Short for **kaisha no denwa-bangō desu**. This sort of abbreviated expression is often used in Japanese.

## 7. (03) 3400-9031

Spoken as **zero-san no san-yon-zero-zero no kyū-zero-san-ichi**. The area code (Tokyo's is 03), the exchange and the number are joined by the particle **no**. In telephone numbers 0 is often pronounced **zero** in Japanese.

## 8. Nani/nan, "what"

"What" is **nani**, but it often becomes **nan**, as in **Kore wa nan desu ka**.  
"What is this?"

## 9. Nan-ban, "What number?"

*ex.* **Tanaka-san no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka**. "What is Mr. Tanaka's telephone number?"

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Kore wa meishi desu.**
2. **Kore wa meishi dewa arimasen.**
3. **Kore wa Tanaka-san no tokei desu. Kore wa Tanaka-san no desu.**
4. **Kaisha no denwa-bangō wa (03) 3400-9031 desu.**

1. This is a business card. (These are business cards.)
2. This is not a business card.
3. This is Mr. Tanaka's watch. This is Mr. Tanaka's.
4. The company's telephone number is (03) 3400-9031.

### Vocabulary

**tokei** clock, watch

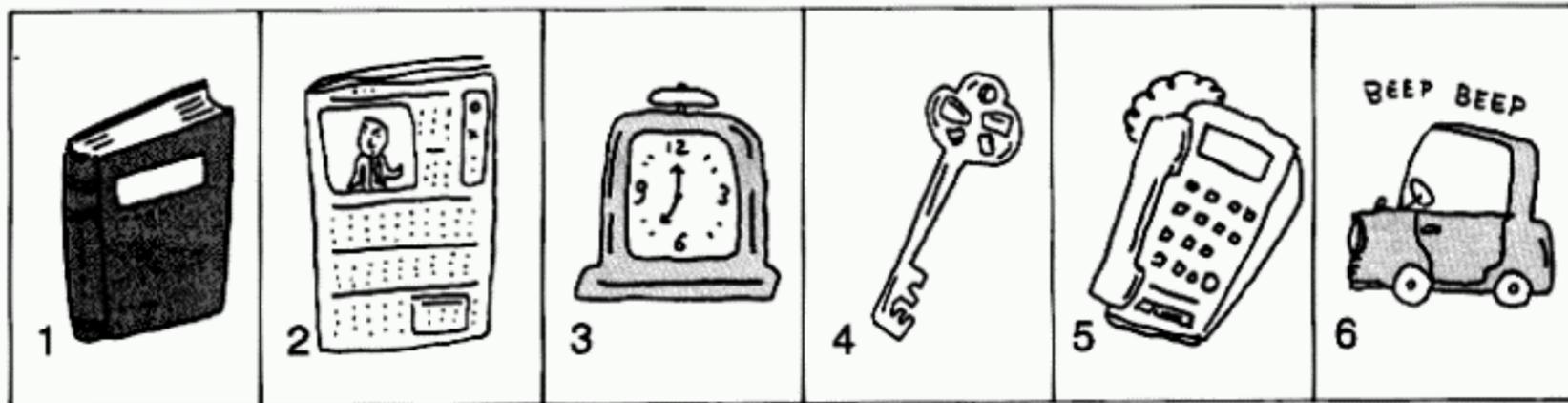
## EXERCISES

---

I Look at the pictures and practice the following pattern by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

*ex.* **Kore wa meishi desu.**

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. <b>hon</b>     | 4. <b>kagi</b>   |
| 2. <b>shimbun</b> | 5. <b>denwa</b>  |
| 3. <b>tokei</b>   | 6. <b>kuruma</b> |



II Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: Kore wa meishi desu ka.

Aa: Hai, meishi desu.

An: Iie, meishi dewa arimasen. Hon desu.

1. hon, shimbun
2. jūsho, denwa-bangō

B. *ex.* Q: Kore wa nan desu ka.

A: Namae desu.

1. tokei
2. kagi
3. denwa

C. *ex.* Q: Kore wa Tanaka-san no kuruma desu ka.

Aa: Hai, Tanaka-san no kuruma desu. Tanaka-san no desu.

An: Iie, Tanaka-san no kuruma dewa arimasen. Tanaka-san no dewa arimasen.

1. Sumisu-san
2. kaisha

D. *ex.* Q: Kore wa dare no hon desu ka.

A: Tanaka-san no desu.

1. Sumisu-san
2. kaisha
3. watashi

III Numbers: Memorize the numbers from 0 to 20.

0, zero/rei	7, shichi/nana	14, jūshi/jūyon
1, ichi	8, hachi	15, jūgo
2, ni	9, kyū/ku	16, jūroku
3, san	10, jū	17, jūshichi/jūnana
4, shi/yon	11, jūichi	18, jūhachi
5, go	12, jūni	19, jūkyū/jūku
6, roku	13, jūsan	20, nijū

IV Telephone numbers: Practice saying the following telephone numbers.

(03) 3742-8955. Zero-san no san-nana-yon-ni no hachi-kyū-go-go.

3401-5634. San-yon-zero-ichi no go-roku-san-yon.

Zero, yon, nana and kyū are used for 0, 4, 7 and 9 in telephone numbers.

V Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the example given.

*ex.* Q: Kaisha no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.

A: 3742-8920 desu.

1. ginkō, 3325-8871
2. gakkō, (03) 3781-6493
3. Tanaka-san no uchi, 3956-4158

## Vocabulary

hon	book	nan	what
shimbun	newspaper	dare no	whose
kagi	key	nan-ban	what number
kuruma	car	-ban	number
jūsho	address	gakkō	school

## SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. **Hayashi:** Kore wa Sumisu-san no tokei desu ka.

**Tanaka:** Hai, Sumisu-san no tokei desu.

Hayashi: Is this Mr. Smith's watch?

Tanaka: Yes, it's Mr. Smith's watch.

2. **Hayashi:** Kore wa Sumisu-san no tokei desu ka.

**Sumisu:** Hai, watashi no tokei desu.

Hayashi: Is this your watch?

Smith: Yes, it's my watch.

3. **Hayashi:** Kore wa Tanaka-san no hon desu ka.

**Sumisu:** Iie, Tanaka-san no dewa arimasen. Watashi no desu.

Hayashi: Is this Mr. Tanaka's book?

Smith: No, it's not Mr. Tanaka's. It's mine.

4. **Sumisu:** Taishikan no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.

**Hisho:** 3325-7634 desu.

**Sumisu:** Ginkō no denwa-bangō wa?

**Hisho:** 3423-6502 desu.

Smith: What is the telephone number of the embassy?

Secretary: It's 3325-7634.

Smith: What about the telephone number of the bank?

Secretary: It's 3423-6502.

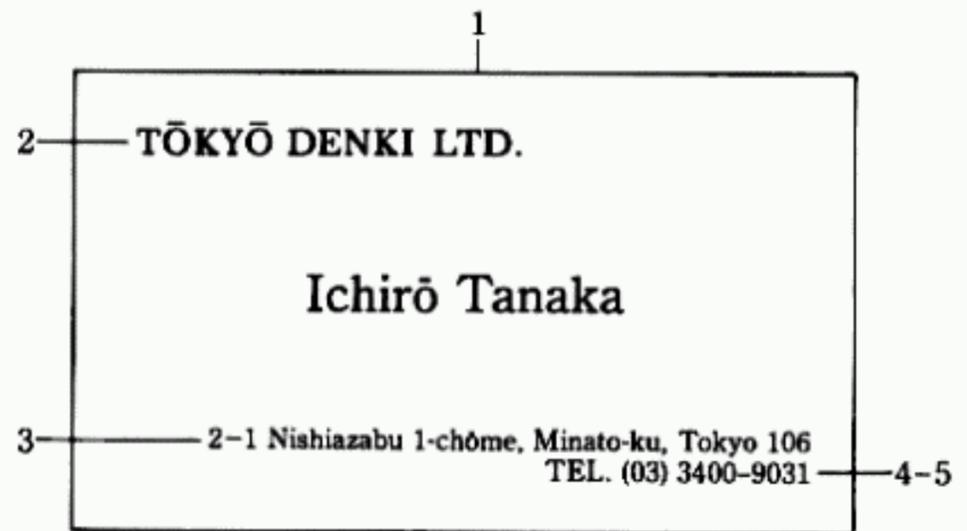
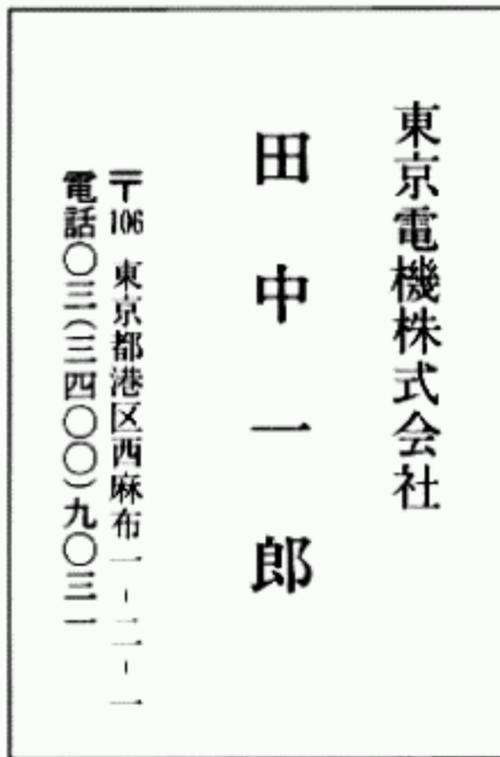
## QUIZ

I Look at the illustrated business card and answer the questions.

1. **Kore wa nan desu ka.**

2. **Kore wa kaisha no namae desu ka.**

3. **Kore wa Tanaka-san no uchi no jūsho desu ka, kaisha no desu ka.**



4. **Kore wa Tanaka-san no uchi no denwa-bangō desu ka.**
5. **Tanaka-san no kaisha no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.**

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. **Kore wa (      ) no denwa-bangō desu ka.**  
**Iie; kaisha no dewa arimasen. Uchi no desu.**
2. **Kore wa (      ) no jūsho desu ka.**  
**Tanaka-san no desu.**
3. **Kore wa (      ) desu ka.**  
**Tokei desu.**
4. **Tanaka-san no uchi no denwa-bangō wa (      ) desu ka.**  
**3325-7634 desu.**

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses.

1. **Kochira (      ) donata desu ka.**
2. **Kore (      ) nan desu (      ).**  
**Kaisha (      ) denwa-bangō desu.**  
**Kore (      )?**  
**Kaisha (      ) jūsho desu.**
3. **Kore (      ) watashi (      ) kuruma dewa arimasen. Kaisha (      ) desu.**

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. This is Mr. Tanaka.
2. This is Mr. Tanaka's business card.
3. This is not Mr. Tanaka's home telephone number. It is that of his company.
4. What is your company's telephone number?

---

# LESSON 3 DAY AND TIME

---

**Mr. Smith goes to a department store. It is not open yet.**

スミス： すみません。いま なんじですか。

おんなの ひと： 9じ50ぷんです。

スミス： デパートは なんじからですか。

おんなの ひと： 10じからです。

スミス： なんじまでですか。

おんなの ひと： ごご 6じまでです。

スミス： どうも ありがとう。

おんなの ひと： どういたしまして。

■ デパートは 10じから 6じまでです。

**Sumisu: Sumimasen. Ima nan-ji desu ka.**

**Onna no hito: Ku-ji gojuppun desu.**

**Sumisu: Depāto wa nan-ji kara desu ka.**

**Onna no hito: Jū-ji kara desu.**

**Sumisu: Nan-ji made desu ka.**

**Onna no hito: Gogo roku-ji made desu.**

**Sumisu: Dōmo arigatō.**

**Onna no hito: Dō itashimashite.**

■ **Depāto wa jū-ji kara roku-ji made desu.**

Smith: Excuse me. What time is it now?

Woman: It's 9:50.

Smith: What time does the store open?

Woman: It opens at 10:00.

Smith: How late does it stay open?

Woman: It stays open until 6 P.M.

Smith: Thank you very much.

Woman: Don't mention it.

■ **The department store's hours are from 10:00 to 6:00.**

## Vocabulary

すみません	sumimasen	Excuse me./I'm sorry.
いま	ima	now
なんじ	nan-ji	what time
～じ	-ji	o'clock
おんなの ひと	onna no hito	woman
おんな	onna	woman, female
ひと	hito	person
9じ	ku-ji	9 o'clock
50.ぶん	gojuppun/gojippun	50 minutes
～ぶん、～ぷん	-fun, -pun	minute
デパート	depāto	department store
から	kara	from (particle)
10じ	jū-ji	10 o'clock
まで	made	until (particle)
ごご	gogo	P.M.
6じ	roku-ji	6 o'clock
どう いたしまして	dō itashimashite	Don't mention it./You're welcome. (lit. "What have (I) done?")

## NOTES

---

### 1. Sumimasen.

**Sumimasen**, "Excuse me," prefaces a request, such as asking a stranger for information. It can also mean "Thank you," "I'm sorry," or "Pardon me."

### 2. Jū-ji kara desu. Gogo roku-ji made desu.

"From 10 o'clock." "Until 6 P.M."

Particles follow words, rather than proceed them. (See Grammar II, p. 53.) Note that instead of **Jū-ji kara hirakimasu**, "It is open from 10 o'clock," the word "open" is omitted. When the verb is understood, only the key words, (here **jū-ji kara**, **roku-ji made**) followed by **desu** are often used.

### 3. When

Hour. **Nan-ji**, "what time?"

Day of the week. **Nan-yōbi**, "which day of the week?"

Day of the month. **Nan-nichi**, "which day of the month?"

Month. **Nan-gatsu**, "which month?"

Time in general. **Itsu**, "when?"

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. Ima gozen 10-ji desu.
2. Hiru-yasumi wa 12-ji kara 1-ji han made desu.
3. Kyō wa 6-gatsu 18-nichi desu.
4. Ashita wa Hayashi-san no tanjōbi desu.
5. Kinō wa kin-yōbi deshita.
6. Kinō wa moku-yōbi dewa arimasendeshita.

1. It's 10 A.M. now.
2. Lunch time is from 12:00 to 1:30.
3. Today is June 18.
4. Tomorrow is Mr. Hayashi's birthday.
5. Yesterday was Friday.
6. Yesterday was not Thursday.

### Vocabulary

gozen	A.M.	-nichi	day (See Exercise VI, p. 35.)
hiru-yasumi	lunch time		
hiru	noon	ashita	tomorrow
yasumi	rest (period)	tanjōbi	birthday
1-ji han	half past 1 ( <i>lit.</i> "1 o'clock half")	kinō	yesterday
han	half	kin-yōbi	Friday
kyō	today	-yōbi	day of the week (See Exercise V, p. 35.)
6-gatsu 18 nichi	June 18	deshita	was
6-gatsu	June ( <i>lit.</i> sixth month)	moku-yōbi	Thursday
-gatsu	month (See Exercise VII, p. 35.)	arimasendeshita	was not
18-nichi	18 day		

## EXERCISES

---

I Numbers: Memorize the numbers from 20 to 100.

20, nijū	50, gojū	80, hachijū
30, sanjū	60, rokjū	90, kyūjū
40, yonjū	70, shichijū, nanajū	100, hyaku

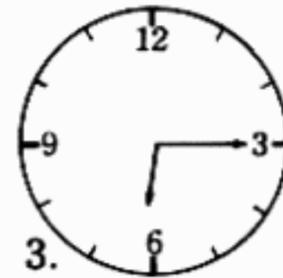
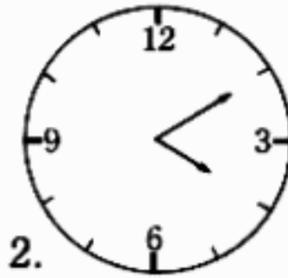
Intermediate numbers are made by adding to the above numbers, the numbers from 1 to 9.

*ex.* 21, nijū-ichi

II Look at the pictures and practice the following pattern as in the example given.

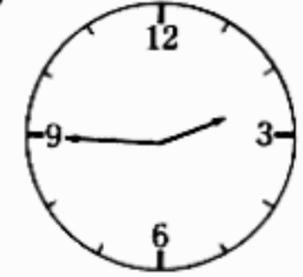
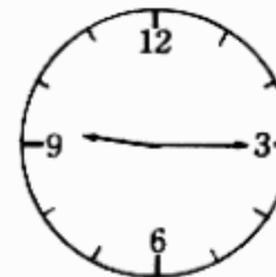
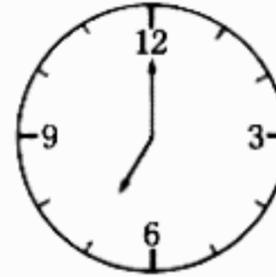
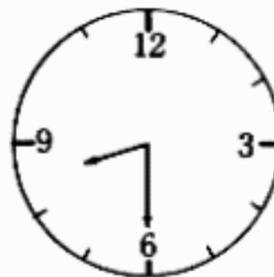
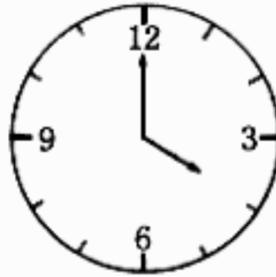
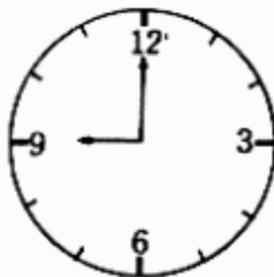
ex. Ima gozen 1-ji desu.

1. 3-ji
2. gogo 4-ji 10-pun
3. gozen 6-ji 15-fun
4. 9-ji han



III Time: Practice telling time.

A. Ima nan-ji desu ka?



B. Nan-ji kara nan-ji made desu ka?



IV Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. ex. Q: Ima nan-ji desu ka.

A: 8-ji desu.

1. 6:00
2. 3:00 P.M.
3. 9:30 A.M.

B. *ex.* Q: Pāti wa nan-ji kara desu ka.

A: 7-ji kara desu.

1. ginkō, 9:00

2. eiga, 4:45

3. kaigi, 9:30

C. *ex.* Q: Depāto wa nan-ji made desu ka.

A: Gogo 6-ji made desu.

1. hiru-yasumi, 1:30

2. yūbinkyoku, gogo 5:00

3. shigoto, 5:15

D. *ex.* Q: Hiru-yasumi wa nan-ji kara nan-ji made desu ka.

A: 12-ji kara 1-ji made desu.

1. eiga, 3:30, 4:45

2. ginkō, 9:00, 3:00

V Days of the week: Memorize the names of the days of the week.

nichi-yōbi, Sunday

sui-yōbi, Wednesday

do-yōbi, Saturday

getsu-yōbi, Monday

moku-yōbi, Thursday

ka-yōbi, Tuesday

kin-yōbi, Friday

VI Days of the month: Memorize the days of the month.

1st, tsuitachi

11th, jūichi-nichi

21st, nijūichi-nichi

2nd, futsuka

12th, jūni-nichi

22nd, nijūni-nichi

3rd, mikka

13th, jūsan-nichi

23rd, nijūsan-nichi

4th, yokka

14th, jūyokka

24th, nijūyokka

5th, itsuka

15th, jūgo-nichi

25th, nijūgo-nichi

6th, muika

16th, jūroku-nichi

26th, nijūroku-nichi

7th, nanoka

17th, jūshichi-nichi

27th, nijūshichi-nichi

8th, yōka

18th, jūhachi-nichi

28th, nijūhachi-nichi

9th, kokonoka

19th, jūku-nichi

29th, nijūku-nichi

10th, tōka

20th, hatsuka

30th, sanjū-nichi

31st, sanjūichi-nichi

VII Months. Memorize the names of the months.

ichi-gatsu, January

go-gatsu, May

ku-gatsu, September

ni-gatsu, February

roku-gatsu, June

jū-gatsu, October

san-gatsu, March

shichi-gatsu, July

jūichi-gatsu, November

shi-gatsu, April

hachi-gatsu, August

jūni-gatsu, December

VIII Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: Kyō wa nan-nichi desu ka.

A: 15-nichi desu.

1. 19-nichi
2. 23-nichi
3. 27-nichi

B. *ex.* Q: Ashita wa nan-yōbi desu ka.

A: Ka-yōbi desu.

1. sui-yōbi
2. moku-yōbi

C. *ex.* Q: Kinō wa nan-nichi deshita ka.

A: 11-nichi deshita.

1. 12-nichi
2. 13-nichi

D. *ex.* Q: [Anata no] Tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka.

A: 3-gatsu desu.

Q: 3-gatsu nan-nichi desu ka.

A: 3-gatsu 26-nichi desu.

1. 4-gatsu, 15-nichi
2. 9-gatsu, 21-nichi
3. 12-gatsu, 18-nichi

E. *ex.* Q: Kinō wa moku-yōbi deshita ka.

A: Iie, moku-yōbi dewa arimasendeshita. Kin-yōbi deshita.

1. getsu-yōbi, ka-yōbi
2. sui-yōbi, moku-yōbi
3. do-yōbi, nichi-yōbi

### Vocabulary

pāti	party	shigoto	work
eiga	movie	nan-nichi	which day (of the month)
kaigi	conference, meeting	nan-yōbi	which day (of the week)
yūbinkyoku	post office	itsu	when

### SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. Sumisu: Ima nan-ji desu ka.

Hisho: 9-ji han desu.

Sumisu: Kaigi wa nan-ji kara desu ka.

Hisho: 10-ji kara desu.

Smith: What time is it now?

Secretary: It's 9:30.

Smith: What time does the meeting begin?

Secretary: It's from 10:00.

2. **Tanaka:** Natsu-yasumi wa itsu kara desu ka.  
**Sumisu:** 7-gatsu 15-nichi kara desu.  
**Tanaka:** 7-gatsu 15-nichi wa nan-yōbi desu ka.  
**Sumisu:** Do-yōbi desu.

**Tanaka:** When does summer vacation begin?

**Smith:** It's from July 15.

**Tanaka:** What day is July 15?

**Smith:** It's a Saturday.

### Vocabulary

natsu-yasumi	summer vacation
natsu	summer

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Ima 10-ji desu ka.
2. Depāto wa nan-ji kara desu ka.
3. Depāto wa 7-ji made desu ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Hiru-yasumi wa ( ) kara desu ka.  
12-ji han kara desu.
2. Kyō wa ( ) desu ka.  
Ka-yōbi desu.
3. Kinō wa ( ) deshita ka.  
11-nichi deshita.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses.

1. Kinō ( ) kin-yōbi deshita.
2. Watashi ( ) kaisha no hiru-yasumi ( ) 12-ji kara desu.
3. Depāto ( ) nan-ji ( ) nan-ji ( ) desu ka.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. Thank you very much.
2. You're welcome.
3. Excuse me. Until what time does the post office stay open?
4. Today is the 15. Tomorrow is the 16.
5. Today is Thursday. Yesterday was Wednesday.

---

# LESSON **4** HOW MUCH?

---

**Mr. Smith goes shopping in the department store.**

デパートの てんいん：いらっしゃいませ。

スミス： それを みせてください。

デパートの てんいん：はい、どうぞ。

スミス： これは いくらですか。

デパートの てんいん：3,000えんです。

スミス： それは いくらですか。

デパートの てんいん：これも 3,000えんです。

スミス： じゃ、それを ください。

デパートの てんいん：はい、ありがとうございます。

**Depāto no ten'in: Irasshaimase.**

**Sumisu: Sore o misete kudasai.**

**Depāto no ten'in: Hai, dōzo.**

**Sumisu: Kore wa ikura desu ka.**

**Depāto no ten'in: Sanzen-en desu.**

**Sumisu: Sore wa ikura desu ka.**

**Depāto no ten'in: Kore mo sanzen-en desu.**

**Sumisu: Ja, sore o kudasai.**

**Depāto no ten'in: Hai, arigatō gozaimasu.**

Store Clerk: May I help you, sir? (*lit.* "Welcome!")

Smith: Would you show me that, please?

Store Clerk: Certainly, sir. Here you are.

Smith: How much is this?

Store Clerk: 3,000 yen.

Smith: How much is that one?

Store Clerk: This one's 3,000 yen, too.

Smith: Well then, please give me that one.

Store Clerk: Very well, sir. Thank you.

## Vocabulary

てんいん いらっしゃいませ	ten'in irasshaimase	store clerk Come in!/Welcome! (greeting to customers in stores/restaurants)
それ を みせて ください みせます (みせる)	sore o misete kudasai misemasu (miseru)	that, that one (object marker, particle) Please show me show
いくら 3,000えん ～えん	ikura sanzen-en -en	how much 3,000 yen yen (¥)
も	mo	too (particle)
じゃ	ja	Well then . . .
ください	kudasai	Please give me . . .

## NOTES

### 1. Kore, sore

Whereas English has only "this" and "that," Japanese has three separate indicators: **Kore**, **sore**, and **are**. (See Note 5, p. 46.)

**Kore** indicates something near the speaker.

**Sore** indicates something near the person spoken to.

**Are** indicates something not near either person.

*ex.* **Kore wa watashi no meishi desu.** "This is my business card."

### 2. Mo

The particle **mo** means "too, also, either." It is used in both affirmative and negative sentences.

*ex.* **Sore wa 3,000-en desu. Kore mo 3,000-en desu.** "That one is ¥3,000. This one is ¥3,000, too."

**Kore wa watashi no kasa ja arimasen. Sore mo watashi no ja arimasen.**  
"This is not my umbrella. That's not mine either."

### 3. Ja, sore o kudasai.

**Dewa** and **ja** correspond to "well" or "well then," an interjection expressing conclusion or resignation.

### 4. Sore o kudasai.

**Kudasai**, "please give me," follows the object (a noun referring to concrete things only) + object marker **o**. In this case, **onegaishimasu** can be used instead of **kudasai**.

*ex.* **Banana o kudasai.** "Please give me some bananas."

### 5. Ikura, "how much"

*ex.* **Kono fuirumu wa ikura desu ka.** "How much is this film?"

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Kore wa tokei desu.**
2. **Sore mo tokei desu.**
3. **Are wa 3,000-en desu.**
4. **Kore o kudasai.**
5. **Are mo kudasai.**

1. This is a watch.
2. That is a watch, too.
3. That one (over there) is ¥3,000.
4. Give me this one, please.
5. Give me that one (over there), too, please.

### Vocabulary

are that (over there)

### EXERCISES

---

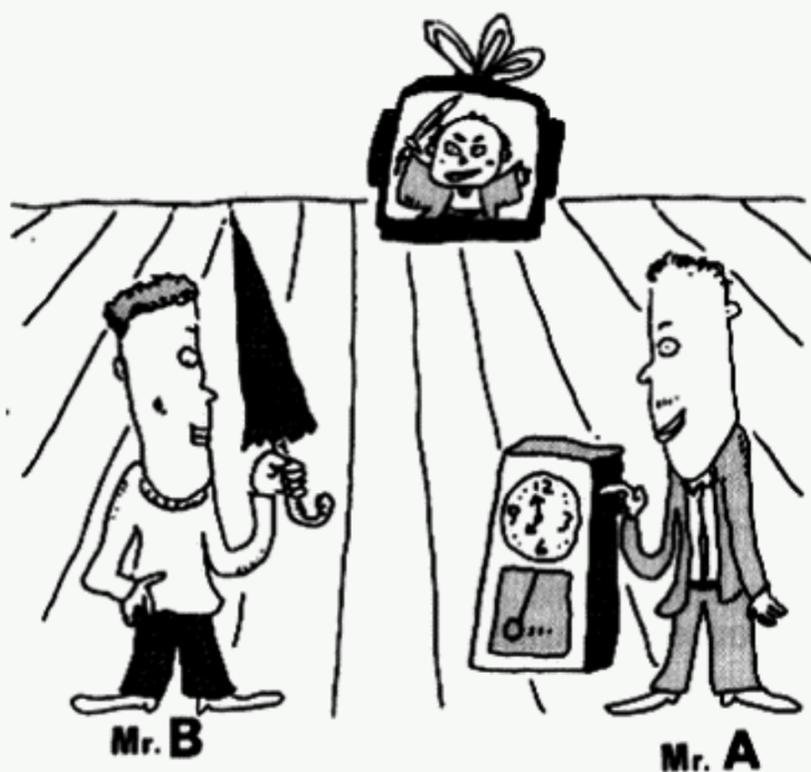
I Look at the pictures and practice the following patterns.

A. Imagine you are Mr. A and say the following.

1. **Kore wa tokei desu.**
2. **Sore wa kasa desu.**
3. **Are wa terebi desu.**

B. Now imagine you are Mr. B and say the following.

1. **Kore wa kasa desu.**
2. **Sore wa tokei desu.**
3. **Are wa terebi desu.**



C. Imagine you are the clerk and state the prices of the objects illustrated.

1. **Kore wa 3,000-en desu.**
2. **Sore wa 3,500-en desu.**
3. **Are mo 3,500-en desu.**

II Numbers: Memorize the numbers from 100 to 1,000,000,000,000 and note how decimals and fractions are read.

100. <b>hyaku</b>	1,000. <b>sen</b>	10,000. <b>ichiman</b>
200. <b>nihyaku</b>	2,000. <b>nisen</b>	100,000. <b>jūman</b>
300. <b>sambyaku</b>	3,000. <b>sanzen</b>	1,000,000. <b>hyakuman</b>
400. <b>yonhyaku</b>	4,000. <b>yonsen</b>	10,000,000. <b>senman</b>
500. <b>gohyaku</b>	5,000. <b>gosen</b>	100,000,000. <b>ichioku</b>
600. <b>roppyaku</b>	6,000. <b>rokusen</b>	1,000,000,000. <b>jūoku</b>
700. <b>nanahyaku</b>	7,000. <b>nanasen</b>	10,000,000,000. <b>hyakuoku</b>
800. <b>happyaku</b>	8,000. <b>hassen</b>	100,000,000,000. <b>sen'oku</b>
900. <b>kyūhyaku</b>	9,000. <b>kyūsen</b>	1,000,000,000,000. <b>itchō</b>

Intermediate numbers are made by combining the numbers composing them.

ex. 135, **hyaku-sanjū-go**                      1,829, **sen-happyaku-nijū-kyū**

Decimals. (The word for "decimal point" is **ten**.)

0, **rei, zero**

0.7, **rei ten nana**

0.29, **rei ten ni kyū**

0.538, **rei ten go san hachi**

Fractions. (**Bun** means "part.")

$1/2$ , **nibun no ichi**

$1/4$ , **yombun no ichi**

$2/3$ , **sambun no ni**

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. ex. Q: **Kore wa ikura desu ka.**

A: [Sore wa] 2,000-en desu.

1. 1,800-en

2. 1,200-en

3. 7,500-en

B. ex. Q: Sore wa hon desu ka.

A: Hai, kore wa hon desu.

Q: Are mo hon desu ka.

A: Hai, are mo hon desu.

1. **tokei**

2. **rajio**

C. ex. Q: **Kore wa ikura desu ka.**

A: Sore wa 3,500-en desu.

Q: Are mo 3,500-en desu ka.

A: Hai, are mo 3,500-en desu.

1. ikura, 5,000-en

2. nan, rajio

D. ex. Q: Sore wa 3,000-en desu ka.

A: Hai, kore wa 3,000-en desu.

Q: Are mo 3,000-en desu ka.

A: Iie, are wa 3,000-en dewa arimasen. 3,500-en desu.

1. tēpurekōdā, rajio

2. Tanaka-san no hon, Sumisu-san no hon

IV Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

ex. Kore o kudasai.

1. sore

2. haizara

3. mizu

4. ringo

5. reshito

### Vocabulary

kasa	umbrella	haizara	ashtray
terebi	TV (set)	mizu	water
rajio	radio	ringo	apple
tēpurekōdā	tape recorder	reshito	receipt

### SHORT DIALOGUE

---

Sumisu: Sumimasen. Are wa rajio desu ka.

Ten'in: Iie, rajio dewa arimasen. Tēpurekōdā desu.

Sumisu: Kore wa rajio desu ka.

Ten'in: Hai, rajio desu.

Sumisu: Ikura desu ka.

Ten'in: 28,000-en desu.

Sumisu: Dewa, kore o kudasai.

Smith: Excuse me. Is that a radio?

Clerk: No, it's not a radio. It's a tape recorder.

Smith: Is this a radio?

Clerk: Yes, it's a radio.

Smith: How much is it?

Clerk: It's ¥28,000.

Smith: Then, I'll take this.

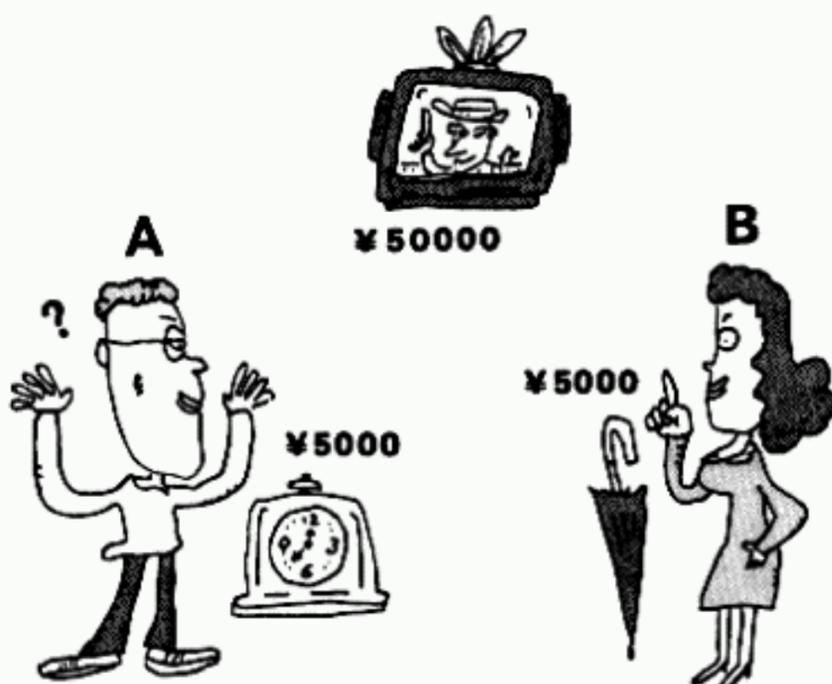
### Vocabulary

dewa well then

## QUIZ

I Imagine you are B in the illustration and answer A's questions.

1. Kore wa tokei desu.  
Sore mo tokei desu ka.
2. Are wa nan desu ka.
3. Are wa ikura desu ka.
4. Kore mo 50,000-en desu ka.
5. Kore wa ikura desu ka.
6. Sore mo 5,000-en desu ka.



II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Sore wa ( ) desu ka.  
Kore wa tēpurekōdā desu.
2. Kore wa ( ) desu ka.  
Sore wa 13,000-en desu.
3. Kochira wa ( ) desu ka.  
Tanaka-san desu.
4. ( ) wa ikura desu ka.  
Are wa 3,500-en desu.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses.

1. Kore ( ) kudasai.
2. Kore ( ) ikura desu ka.  
5,000-en desu.  
Sore ( ) 5,000-en desu ka.  
Hai, kore ( ) 5,000-en desu.  
Are ( ) 5,000-en desu ka.  
Iie, are ( ) 5,000-en dewa arimasen. Are ( ) 3,500-en desu.

IV Answer with the appropriate expressions in Japanese.

1. When you want a store clerk to show you an article that is near him, what do you say?
2. When you have decided to buy an article that is near you, what do you say to the clerk?
3. When you want to know the price of an article near you, what do you say?
4. What does a store clerk say when a customer enters the store?

---

# LESSON 5 COUNTING OBJECTS

---

## Mr. Smith buys a camera at a camera shop.

スミス： すみません。その カメラは いくらですか。

カメラヤ： どれですか。

スミス： その ちいさい カメラです。

カメラヤ： これですか。25,000えんです。どうぞ。

スミス： これを ください。それから フィルムを みつつ  
ください。

■ちいさい カメラは 25,000えんです。

**Sumisu:** Sumimasen. Sono kamera wa ikura desu ka.

**Kamera-ya:** Dore desu ka.

**Sumisu:** Sono chiisai kamera desu.

**Kamera-ya:** Kore desu ka. 25,000-en desu. Dōzo.

**Sumisu:** Kore o kudasai. Sorekara fuirumu o mittsu kudasai.

■Chiisai kamera wa 25,000-en desu.

Smith: Excuse me. How much is that camera?

Salesman: Which one, sir?

Smith: That small camera.

Salesman: This one? It's ¥25,000. Here you are.

Smith: I'll take this. And please let me have three (rolls of) film.

■The small camera is ¥25,000.

### Vocabulary

その	sono	that
カメラ	kamera	camera
カメラヤ	kamera-ya	camera store, camera seller
~ヤ	-ya	store, seller
どれ	dore	which
ちいさい	chiisai	small (-i adj.)

それから	sorekara	and
フィルム	fuirumu	film
みっつ	mittsu	3

## NOTES

---

### 1. Kamera-ya

**Kamera-ya** means not only "camera store" but also the store owner or store clerk. **Ya** is added to many things to mean the store or the person selling something.

*ex.* **Hana-ya**, "flower shop, florist"; **sakana-ya**, "fish shop, fish seller"; **hon-ya**, "book store, book seller."

### 2. Sorekara

**Sorekara**, "and, and also, and then, after that, in addition," is a connective placed at the beginning of a new sentence to connect it to the previous one.

### 3. Mittsu

In Japanese there are two numerical systems, the **hitotsu**, **futatsu**, **mittsu** system and the abstract **ichi**, **ni**, **san** system. Counting things can be done in two ways:

1. Using the **hitotsu**, **futatsu**, **mittsu** system independently. (See Exercise III, p. 48.)

*ex.* **Fuirumu o mittsu kudasai.** "Please give me three (rolls of) film."

2. Using the **ichi**, **ni**, **san** system combined with a counter. Two counters are **-mai**, for thin, flat objects such as paper, records, etc., and **-hon** (**-bon**, **-pon**), for long, slender objects such as pencils, bottles, etc. Other counters appear in the appropriate place in the text, and they are given comprehensively in Appendix I.

<b>-mai</b> (how many . . . <b>nan-mai</b> )		<b>-hon</b> (how many . . . <b>nan-bon</b> )	
<b>ichi-mai</b>	<b>shichi-mai, nana-mai</b>	<b>ippon</b>	<b>nana-hon</b>
<b>ni-mai</b>	<b>hachi-mai</b>	<b>ni-hon</b>	<b>hapon</b>
<b>san-mai</b>	<b>kyū-mai</b>	<b>sam-bon</b>	<b>kyū-hon</b>
<b>yon-mai</b>	<b>jū-mai</b>	<b>yon-hon</b>	<b>juppon</b>
<b>go-mai</b>	<b>jūichi-mai</b>	<b>go-hon</b>	<b>jūippon</b>
<b>roku-mai</b>	<b>jūni-mai</b>	<b>roppon</b>	<b>jūni-hon</b>

*ex.* **Hagaki o san-mai kudasai.** "Please give me three postcards." (*lit.* "three 'sheets of' ")

Note: The **hitotsu**, **futatsu**, **mittsu** system only goes as far as **tō** (10), after which the **ichi**, **ni**, **san** system is used: **jū-ichi**, **jū-ni**, **jū-san**, etc.

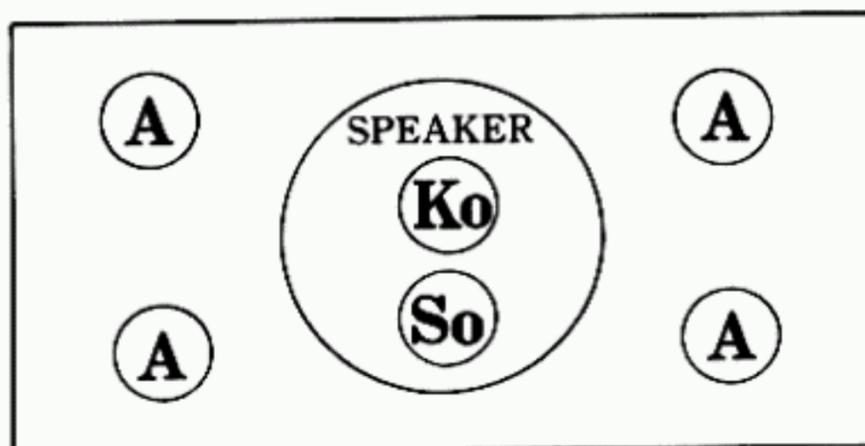
4. **Fuirumu o mittsu kudasai.**

Note the word order: thing + **o** + numeral (or numeral and counter) + **kudasai**.

5. **Kono chiisai kamera**

**Chiisai** is an adjective. Adjectives will be given in detail in Lesson 13 and Lesson 14.

In Lesson 4 it was pointed out that there are three words for this and that: **kore**, **sore** and **are**. The demonstratives **kono**, **sono** and **ano** are used with nouns and have similar meanings from the viewpoint of the speaker. Study the following diagram and the chart (see Appendix F) to understand the meaning of these words.



6. **Ikutsu**, "How many?"

*ex.* **Fuirumu o kudasai.** "Please give me some film."

**Hai, ikutsu desu ka.** "Certainly sir, how many do you wish?"

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Kono kamera wa 25,000-en desu.**
2. **Kono ringo wa hitotsu 200-en desu.**
3. **Kore wa Nihon no kamera desu.**
4. **Sono chiisai denchi o mittsu kudasai.**

1. This camera is ¥25,000.
2. One of these apples is ¥200.
3. This is a Japanese camera.
4. Please give me three of those small batteries.

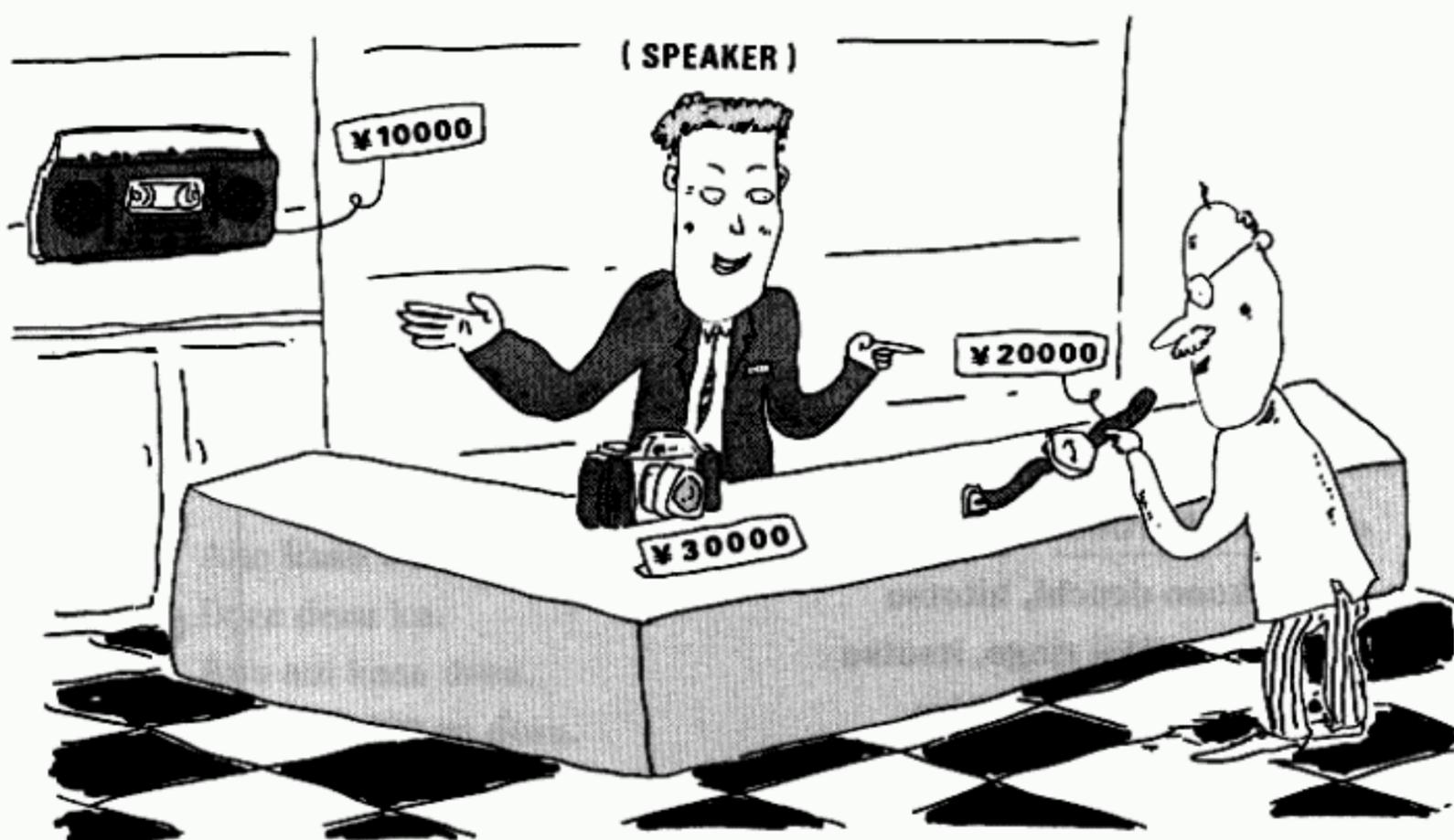
### Vocabulary

<b>kono</b>	this
<b>hitotsu</b>	1
<b>denchi</b>	battery

## EXERCISES

I Look at the picture and practice how to use **kore/kono**, **sore/sono** and **are/ano**.

1. **Kore wa 30,000-en desu.**  
**Kono kamera wa 30,000-en desu.**
2. **Sore wa 20,000-en desu.**  
**Sono tokei wa 20,000-en desu.**
3. **Are wa 10,000-en desu.**  
**Ano tēpurekōdā wa 10,000-en desu.**



II Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

- A. *ex.* Q: Sono kamera wa ikura desu ka.  
A: Kore wa 30,000-en desu.
1. kono rajio, sore
  2. ano tēpurekōdā, are
- B. *ex.* Q: Kore wa Nihon no kuruma desu ka.  
A: Iie, Nihon no dewa arimasen. Doitsu no desu.
1. Amerika, Igirisu
  2. Itaria, Furansu
- C. *ex.* Q: Kore wa doko no kamera desu ka.  
A: Nihon no kamera desu.
1. Doitsu
  2. Amerika

D. ex. Q: Ano akai kasa wa ikura desu ka.

A: Are wa 5,000-en desu.

1. chiisai kamera, 20,000-en
2. Doitsu no tokei, 10,000-en

E. ex. Q: Hayashi-san no kasa wa kore desu ka.

A: Hai, sore desu.

1. sore, kore
2. are, are

F. ex. Hayashi-san no kasa wa dore desu ka.

A: Kore desu.

1. Nihon-go no tēpu
2. Sumisu-san no kuruma

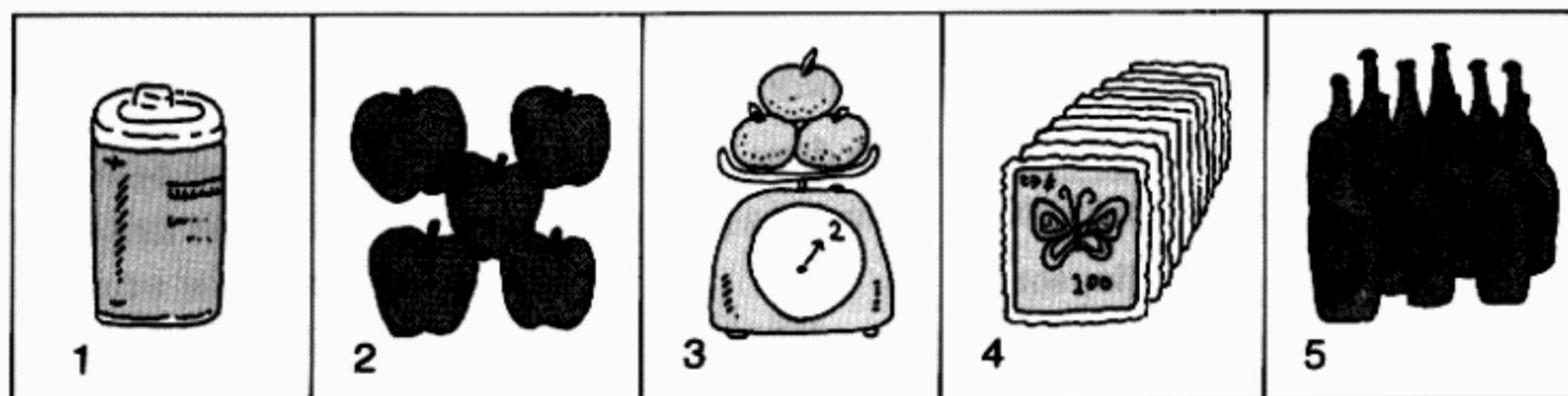
### III Practice how to count things.

1, hitotsu	4, yottsu	7, nanatsu	10, tō
2, futatsu	5, itsutsu	8, yattsu	11, jūichi
3, mittsu	6, muttsu	9, kokonotsu	12, jūni

### IV Look at the pictures and practice the following pattern by changing the underlined parts as in the example given.

ex. Kono fuirumu o futatsu kudasai.

1. kono denchi, hitotsu
2. sono ōkii ringo, itsutsu
3. kono mikan, 2-kiro
4. 100-en no kitte, 10-mai
5. biru, 12-hon



### Vocabulary

ano	that, that one (over there)	akai	red (-i adj.)
Igirisu	United Kingdom	Nihon-go	Japanese language
Itaria	Italy	-go	language
Furansu	France	tēpu	tape
doko	where, belonging to or coming from what place?	futatsu	2
		ōkii	big (-i adj.)

itsutsu	5	10-mai	<i>lit.</i> 10 (sheets)
mikan	tangerine	-mai	(counter)
2-kiro	2 kilograms	biru	beer
-kiro	kilogram	12-hon	12 bottles
kitte	postage stamp	-hon, -bon, -pon	(counter)

## SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. **Sumisu:** Sumimasen. Rajio o misete kudasai.  
**Ten'in:** Dono rajio desu ka.  
**Sumisu:** Ano chiisai rajio desu.  
**Ten'in:** Hai, dōzo.

Smith: Excuse me. Would you show me that radio?

Clerk: Which radio?

Smith: That small radio (over there).

Clerk: Certainly, sir. Here you are.

2. **Sumisu:** Ano kasa wa ikura desu ka.  
**Ten'in:** Dore desu ka.  
**Sumisu:** Ano aoi kasa desu.  
**Ten'in:** Are wa 5,000-en desu.  
**Sumisu:** Ano kuroi kasa mo 5,000-en desu ka.  
**Ten'in:** Iie, are wa 7,000-en desu.  
**Sumisu:** Ja, ano aoi kasa o kudasai.

Smith: How much is that umbrella (over there)?

Clerk: Which one?

Smith: That blue one.

Clerk: That's ¥5,000.

Smith: Is that black umbrella ¥5,000, too?

Clerk: No, it's ¥7,000.

Smith: Well then, I'll take that blue one.

### Vocabulary

<b>dono</b>	which
<b>aoi</b>	blue (-i adj.)
<b>kuroi</b>	black (-i adj.)

## QUIZ

I Supposing you are the store clerk in the illustration. Answer the customer's questions.

1. Kono Doitsu no kamera wa ikura desu ka.
2. Sono kamera mo Doitsu no desu ka.
3. Sono kamera wa ikura desu ka.
4. Ano chiisai rajio wa doko no desu ka.



II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Kono denchi wa ( ) desu ka.  
100-en desu.
2. ( ) wa ikura desu ka.  
Are wa 30,000-en desu.
3. Are wa ( ) no kitte desu ka.  
Iie, Igirisu no dewa arimasen.  
( ) no desu ka.  
Amerika no desu.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

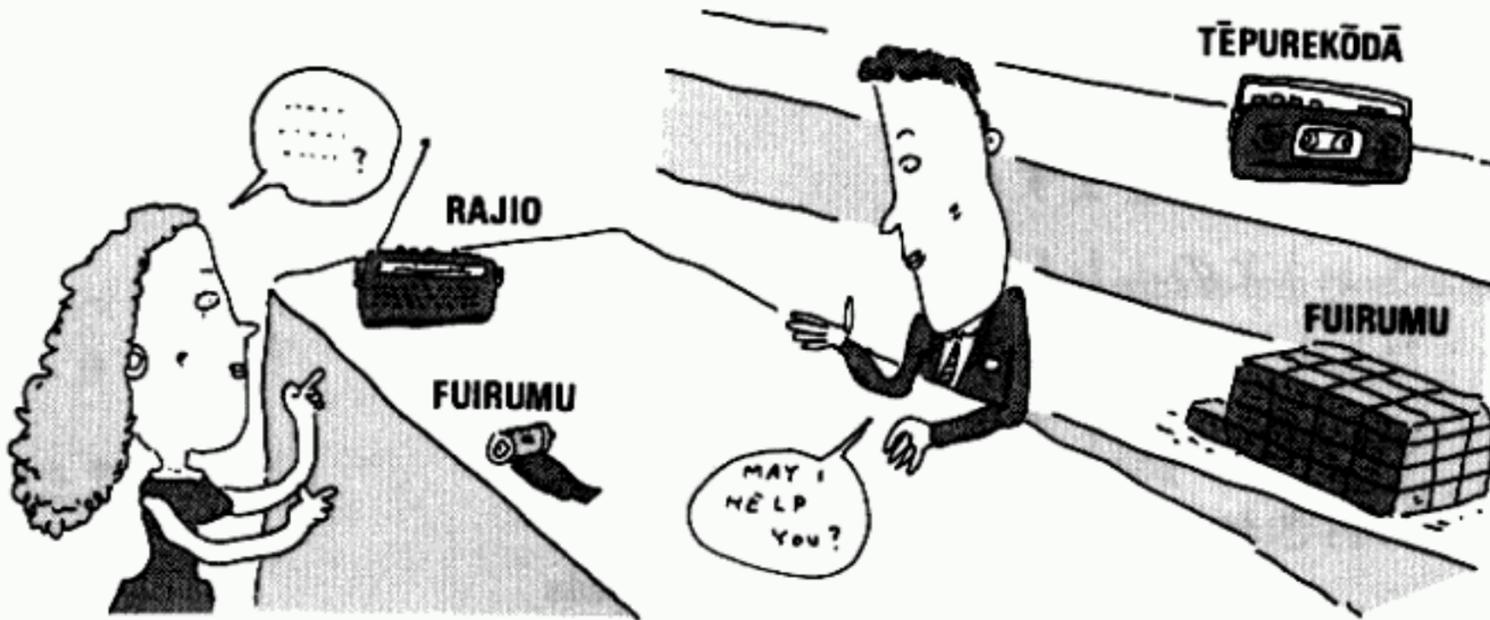
1. Kore ( ) Nihon ( ) tēpurekōdā desu. Sono tēpurekōdā ( )  
Nihon ( ) desu.
2. Kamera ( ) misete kudasai.
3. Biru ( ) 15-hon ( ) kudasai.
4. Kore ( ) 150-en desu.
5. Kono ( ) ringo ( ) hitotsu ( ) 200-en desu.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. How much is this?
2. How much is this radio?
3. My watch is not Japanese. It is American.
4. Please show me that small tape recorder.
5. Please give me 3 (rolls of) film.

Which film?

That film.



---

LESSON  GOING AND COMING

---

**Mr. Tanaka meets Mr. Hayashi at Tokyo Station. Mr. Hayashi looks as if he is going on a trip.**

たなか：あ、はやしさん。しゅっちょうですか。

はやし：ええ。

たなか：どこに いきますか。

はやし：きょうどの ししゃに いきます。

たなか：ひとりで いきますか。

はやし：いいえ、かいしゃの ひとと いきます。

たなか：おおさかにも いきますか。

はやし：いいえ、おおさかには いきません。

たなか：いつ とうきょうに かえりますか。

はやし：あさって かえります。

■はやしさんは かいしゃの ひとと きょうどの ししゃに  
いきます。そして あさって とうきょうに かえります。

**Tanaka: A, Hayashi-san. Shutchō desu ka.**

**Hayashi: Ee.**

**Tanaka: Doko ni ikimasu ka.**

**Hayashi: Kyōto no shisha ni ikimasu.**

**Tanaka: Hitori de ikimasu ka.**

**Hayashi: Iie, kaisha no hito to ikimasu.**

**Tanaka: Ōsaka ni mo ikimasu ka.**

**Hayashi: Iie, Ōsaka ni wa ikimasen.**

**Tanaka: Itsu Tōkyō ni kaerimasu ka.**

**Hayashi: Asatte kaerimasu.**

■ Hayashi-san wa kaisha no hito to Kyōto no shisha ni ikimasu. Soshite asatte Tōkyō ni kaerimasu.

Tanaka: Ah, Mr. Hayashi, is it a business trip (you're going on)?  
 Hayashi: Yes.  
 Tanaka: Where are you going?  
 Hayashi: I'm going to our branch office in Kyoto.  
 Tanaka: Are you going alone?  
 Hayashi: No, I'm going with a person from the company.  
 Tanaka: Are you going to Osaka, too?  
 Hayashi: No, we're not going to Osaka.  
 Tanaka: When are you coming back to Tokyo?  
 Hayashi: We're returning the day after tomorrow.

■ Mr. Hayashi is going to the company's branch office in Kyoto with a colleague. They will return to Tokyo the day after tomorrow.

### Vocabulary

あ	a	ah
しゅっちょうですか	shutchō desu ka	is it a business trip (you're going on)?
しゅっちょう	shutchō	business trip
に	ni	to (particle)
いきます (いく)	ikimasu (iku)	go, is going
きょうと	Kyōto	Kyoto (city and prefecture)
ししゃ	shisha	branch office
ひとりで	hitori de	alone
と	to	with (particle)
おおさか	Ōsaka	Osaka (city and prefecture)
とうきょう	Tōkyō	Tokyo (city and prefecture)
かえります (かえる)	kaerimasu (kaeru)	return, come back
あさって	asatte	the day after tomorrow
そして	soshite	and then

## GRAMMAR II

---

### Lessons 6-7 NI/E verb

1. noun **wa** place NI/E IKIMASU
2. noun **wa** place NI/E IKIMASU KA  
**Hai**, (noun **wa** place **ni**) **ikimasu**.  
**Iie**, (noun **wa** place **ni**) **ikimasen**.

#### • Particles ni/e

Particles are an important part of Japanese sentence structure. They resemble English prepositions in the way they connect words, but unlike English *prepositions*, which come before nouns, Japanese particles are *postpositions*, always coming after nouns. Particles show the grammatical role of nouns in Japanese.

The role of the preposition “to” in English is played by the particles **ni** and **e** in Japanese, placed after the noun—something like the English suffix “-ward,” as in “northward.”

*ex.* **Tōkyō ni/e ikimasu.** “I am going to Tokyo.” (*lit.* “‘Tokyo-ward’ I am going.”)

Theoretically the use of **ni** and **e** are divided as given below, but in actual practice they are interchangeable. In this book, in situations where either might occur, we use **ni**.

**e:** expresses direction

*ex.* **Higashi e ikimasu.** “(I) am going toward the east.”

**ni:** expresses arrival at a destination

*ex.* **Kyōnen no 12-gatsu ni Nihon ni kimashita.** “(I) came to Japan last December.”

Note that some particles, like **ka**, may come at the end of phrases, clauses or sentences. See Lesson 1, **ka**; Lesson 9, **kara**, **yo**, **ne**; Lesson 10, **ne**; Lesson 12, **ga**; and Lesson 16, **ni**.

## • Verbs

Japanese sentences end with the verb. (**Desu** in Grammar I is not strictly speaking a verb, but its use in sentences is similar to that of a verb and so it comes at the end.) The endings of verbs show the tense and whether they are positive or negative.

Tenses of Japanese verbs can be divided roughly into two large categories:

### 1. Present Form

Habitual action: *ex.* **Tanaka-san wa mainichi kaisha ni ikimasu.** “Mr. Tanaka goes to the office (*lit.* company) every day.”

Future: *ex.* [**Watashi wa**] **Ashita kaerimasu.** “I return/am returning/will return tomorrow.”

### 2. Past Form

Past: *ex.* [**Watashi wa**] **Senshū Kyōto ni ikimashita.** “Last week (I) went to Kyoto.”

Present perfect: *ex.* **Ima kimashita.** “(He) has just come.”

In simple sentences like the above, tenses of Japanese verbs closely resemble those in English. However, verbs that occur within a sentence in addition to the main verb at the end (i.e., Before I *left* home, I turned off the TV), do not necessarily take the same form they would in English. But that kind of sentence is outside the scope of this book and must be studied in Book II.

Note: The **-u** form of the verb given in the vocabulary lists (**-u**, **-ku**, **-su**, **-ru**, etc.) is the form found in dictionaries, so it is often called the dictionary form. Used at the end of a sentence, it is less formal in conversations than the **-masu** form. This book uses only the more polite **-masu** form.

## NOTES

---

### 1. A. **Hitori de ikimasu.**

Number of people takes the particle **de**.

*ex.* **Hitori de**, “alone, by oneself”

**San-nin de**, “three of us/them”

**B. Kaisha no hito to ikimasu.**

Individual or individuals take the particle **to**, "with."

*ex.* **Tanaka-san to**, "with Mr. Tanaka"

**2. Ōsaka ni mo ikimasu ka.**

**Iie, Ōsaka ni wa ikimasen.**

Mr. Hayashi says he is going to Kyoto, which is close to the important industrial city of Osaka, so Mr. Tanaka asks him if he is going to Osaka too. **Ōsaka ni mo . . .?** Note the position after the noun of the particles **ni**, "to, towards," and **mo**, "too, also."

In his reply, Mr. Hayashi uses the topic marker particle **wa** to show that **Ōsaka ni** is the topic, "As for Osaka, I am not going there." (See Grammar III, p. 66.) Note that while two particles may normally follow one another, as do **ni mo** and **ni wa** above, **wa** and **mo** never follow the particles **ga** and **o**, but simply take their place. Similarly, **wa** and **mo** are never used together. One or the other is used.

*ex.* **Sumisu-san wa bengoshi desu.** "Mr. Smith is a lawyer." **Buraun-san mo bengoshi desu.** "Mr. Brown, too, is a lawyer."

**Mo** can follow any of the other particles such as **ni**, **kara**, **de**, etc.

**3. Asatte kaerimasu.**

Relative time expressions like "yesterday," "next week," "this month" and "last year" do not take particles.

**4. Soshite, asatte Tōkyō ni kaerimasu.**

In Japanese many sentences begin with connectives, like **soshite**, meaning "and then," which link them to the previous sentence.

**5. A. Doko, "where"**

*ex.* **Doko ni ikimasu ka.** "Where are you going?"

**B. Itsu, "when." Time in general.**

*ex.* **Itsu kimasu ka.** "When are you coming?"

**C. Dare/donata (ga), "who"**

*ex.* **Dare ga Ōsaka ni ikimasu ka.** "Who is going to Osaka?" When the subject is unknown, the particle **ga** should be used after **dare/donata** instead of the topic marker **wa**. (See Grammar III, p. 66.)

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Watashi wa ashita ginkō ni ikimasu.**
2. **Kono densha wa Tōkyō Eki ni ikimasen.**
3. **Watashi wa kinō yūbinkyoku ni ikimashita.**
4. **Watashi wa senshū gakkō ni ikimasendeshita.**
5. **Sumisu-san wa kyonen Amerika kara Nihon ni kimashita.**
6. **Sumisu-san wa rainen Amerika ni kaerimasu.**

1. I'm going to the bank tomorrow.
2. This train doesn't go to Tokyo Station.
3. I went to the post office yesterday.
4. I didn't go to school last week.
5. Mr. Smith came to Japan from America last year.
6. Mr. Smith will go back to America next year.

### Vocabulary

<b>densha</b>	(electric) train	<b>kara</b>	from (particle)
<b>Tōkyō Eki</b>	Tokyo Station	<b>kimashita</b>	came
<b>eki</b>	station	<b>imasu (kuru)</b>	come
<b>senshū</b>	last week	<b>rainen</b>	next year
<b>kyonen</b>	last year		

## EXERCISES

---

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs in their present and past forms.

	Present Form		Past Form	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
go	<b>ikimasu</b>	<b>ikimasen</b>	<b>ikimashita</b>	<b>ikimasendeshita</b>
come	<b>imasu</b>	<b>imasen</b>	<b>imashita</b>	<b>imasendeshita</b>
return	<b>kaerimasu</b>	<b>kaerimasen</b>	<b>kaerimashita</b>	<b>kaerimasendeshita</b>

II Practice the following by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

ex. A. [Watashi wa] Ginkō ni ikimasu.

1. kaisha
2. Amerika

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined part as in the examples given.

A. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Ashita kaisha ni ikimasu ka.

Aa: Hai, ikimasu.

Aa: Iie, ikimasen.

1. tomodachi no uchi
2. depāto
3. taishikan

B. ex. Q: Kono densha wa Tōkyō Eki ni ikimasu ka.

Aa: Hai, ikimasu.

Aa: Iie, ikimasen.

1. basu  
2. chikatetsu
- C. ex. Q: Sumisu-san wa kinō Amerika ni kaerimashita ka.  
A: Hai, kaerimashita.  
An: Iie, kaerimasendeshita.  
1. senshū  
2. sengetsu  
3. kyonen
- D. ex. Q: Dare ga kyō taishikan ni ikimasu ka.  
A: Tanaka-san ga ikimasu.  
1. tomodachi  
2. Tanaka-san no hisho
- E. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Itsu Nihon ni kimashita ka.  
A: Sengetsu kimashita.  
1. senshū  
2. kyonen
- F. ex. Q: Tanaka-san wa kinō doko ni ikimashita ka.  
A: Depāto ni ikimashita.  
1. yūbinkyoku  
2. tomodachi no uchi  
3. ginkō
- G. ex. Q: Sumisu-san wa dare to Narita Kūkō ni ikimashita ka.  
A: Tanaka-san to ikimashita.  
1. tomodachi to  
2. kaisha no hito to  
3. hitori de

### Vocabulary

tomodachi	friend	sengetsu	last month
basu	bus	ga	(subject marker, particle)
chikatetsu	subway, <i>lit.</i> under-ground railway	Narita Kūkō	Narita Airport
		kūkō	airport

### SHORT DIALOGUES

1. Tanaka: Kyō ginkō ni ikimasu ka.  
Hisho: Hai, ikimasu.  
Tanaka: Yūbinkyoku ni mo ikimasu ka.  
Hisho: Iie, yūbinkyoku ni wa ikimasen.
- Tanaka: Are you going to the bank today?  
Secretary: Yes, I am.

Tanaka: Will you go to the post office, too?  
Secretary: No, I'm not going to the post office.

2. Sumisu: Kono densha wa Tōkyō Eki ni ikimasu ka.  
Otoko no hito: Iie, ikimasen.  
Sumisu: Dono densha ga ikimasu ka.  
Otoko no hito: Ano aoi densha ga ikimasu.

Smith: Does this train go to Tokyo Station?  
Man: No, it doesn't.  
Smith: Which train goes there?  
Man: That blue train over there does.

### Vocabulary

otoko no hito man  
otoko man, male

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Hayashi-san wa Ōsaka no shisha ni ikimasu ka, Kyōto no shisha ni ikimasu ka.
2. Hayashi-san wa dare to Kyōto no shisha ni ikimasu ka.
3. Hayashi-san wa itsu Tōkyō ni kaerimasu ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. ( ) ni ikimasu ka.  
Hai, ginkō ni ikimasu.  
( ) ni mo ikimasu ka.  
Iie, yūbinkyoku ni wa ikimasen.
2. ( ) Nihon ni kimashita ka.  
Kyonen kimashita.
3. ( ) ni ikimashita ka.  
Kūkō ni ikimashita.  
( ) to ikimashita ka.  
Hitori de ikimashita.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Tanaka-san wa ashita ( ) Ōsaka ( ) ikimasu.
2. Yamada-san wa kaisha no hito ( ) kūkō ( ) ikimashita.

3. Tanaka-san (     ) itsu (     ) Ōsaka kara kaerimasu ka.
4. Tomodachi wa senshū hitori (     ) Amerika ni kaerimashita.
5. Ashita Kyōto (     ) ikimasu.  
Ōsaka ni (     ) ikimasu ka.  
Iie, Ōsaka ni (     ) ikimasen.
6. Dare (     ) kimashita ka.  
Yamada-san ga kimashita.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. Excuse me, does this bus go to Tokyo Station?
2. Mr. Tanaka went to Osaka yesterday with a person from his company. And he will return to Tokyo the day after tomorrow.
3. Mr. Smith came to Japan alone last year.
4. Who went to the airport?  
Mr. Tanaka's secretary went.

---

# LESSON 7 GOING BY TAXI

---

## Mr. Smith visits Mr. Tanaka on Sunday.

たなか：スミスさん、よく いらっしゃいました。

スミス：こんにちは。

たなか：どうぞ おはいりください。

スミス：しつれいします。

たなか：どうぞ こちらへ。バスで きましたか。

スミス：いいえ、タクシーで きました。

たなか：どうぞ おかけください。

スミス：ありがとうございます。

■スミスさんは にちようびに タクシーで たなかさんの うちに  
いきました。

**Tanaka:** Sumisu-san, yoku irasshaimashita.

**Sumisu:** Konnichiwa.

**Tanaka:** Dōzo ohairi kudasai.

**Sumisu:** Shitsurei shimasu.

**Tanaka:** Dōzo kochira e. Basu de kimashita ka.

**Sumisu:** Iie, takushi de kimashita.

**Tanaka:** Dōzo okake kudasai.

**Sumisu:** Arigatō gozaimasu.

■ Sumisu-san wa nichiyōbi ni takushi de Tanaka-san no uchi ni ikimashita.

Tanaka: Mr. Smith, how nice of you to come.

Smith: Hello.

Tanaka: Do come in.

Smith: May I?

Tanaka: This way, please. Did you come by bus?

Smith: No. I came by taxi.

Tanaka: Do sit down.

Smith: Thank you.

■ Mr. Smith went to Mr. Tanaka's house by taxi on Sunday.

## Vocabulary

よく いらっしゃいました	yoku irasshaimashita	How nice of you to come. (lit. "Welcome!")
よく	yoku	well
いらっしゃいました	irasshaimashita	came
いらっしゃいます (いらっしゃる)	irasshaimasu (irassharu)	come (polite word for <b>kuru</b> )
おはいり ください	ohairi kudasai	Do come in.
はいります (はいる)	hairimasu (hairu)	enter
しつれいします	shitsurei shimasu	May I? (I'm afraid I'll be disturbing you.)
こちらへ	kochira e	this way
こちら	kochira	this direction
で	de	by (particle)
タクシー	takushi	taxi
おかけ ください	okake kudasai	Please have a seat. (lit. "Please sit down.")
かけます (かける)	kakemasu (kakeru)	sit
に	ni	on (particle)

## NOTES

### 1. Shitsurei shimasu.

"May I." (lit. "I'll be so bold as to do so.")

**Shitsurei** essentially means "rudeness" and is used when entering a house or room, passing in front of someone, leaving in the middle of a gathering and so on, in other words, when creating some sort of disturbance and interrupting the status quo. Some people use it as a form of "good-bye," instead of **sayōnara**, when leaving a house or room.

### 2. Basu de kimashita ka.

The particle **de** follows nouns to express means.

ex. **basu de**, (travel) "by bus"

**pen de**, (write) "with pen"

**Nihon-go de**, (speak) "in Japanese"

**iyahōn de**, (listen) "with earphones"

**funabin de**, (send) "by sea mail"

### 3. Nichi-yōbi ni ikimashita.

Specific expressions of time take the particle **ni** as in the following:

**5-ji ni**, "at 5 o'clock"

**do-yōbi ni**, "on Saturday"

**12-nichi ni**, "on the 12th"

**1960-nen ni**, "in 1960"

#### 4. Nani/nan de, "how"

*ex.* Nan de ikimasu ka. "How will you go?"

Basu de ikimasu. "I'll go by bus."

An exception to this pattern is **aruite ikimasu**, "I'll walk."

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. Kurāku-san wa 5-gatsu 18-nichi ni Kanada kara Nihon ni kimashita.
2. Kurāku-san wa rainen no 3-gatsu ni Kanada ni kaerimasu.
3. Watashi wa chikatetsu de kaisha ni ikimasu.

1. Mr. Clark came to Japan on May 18 from Canada.
2. Mr. Clark will go back to Canada in March of next year.
3. I go to the office by subway.

### Vocabulary

Kurāku Clark

Kanada Canada

## EXERCISES

---

I Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

*ex.* Howaito-san wa 5-gatsu 18-nichi ni Nihon ni kimashita.

1. 15-nichi ni
2. 1980 nen ni
3. senshū no moku-yōbi ni
4. sengetsu
5. ototoi
6. senshū

II Make dialogues by changing the underlined part as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: Howaito-san wa itsu Nihon ni kimasu ka.

A: 5-gatsu 18-nichi ni kimasu.

1. getsu-yōbi
2. raishū no do-yōbi
3. raigetsu no 15-nichi
4. rainen no 10-gatsu

B. *ex.* Q: Tanaka-san wa nan de uchi ni kaerimashita ka.

A: Kuruma de kaerimashita.

1. takushi

2. basu
3. densha

C. *ex.* Q: Hayashi-san wa nan-nen ni Ijirisu ni ikimashita ka.

A: 1981-nen ni ikimashita.

1. 1975-nen
2. 1982-nen

D. *ex.* Q: Dare ga kyō Kyōto no shisha ni ikimasu ka.

A: Hayashi-san ga ikimasu.

Q: Hayashi-san wa itsu Tōkyō ni kaerimasu ka.

A: Asatte kaerimasu.

1. Tanaka-san
2. Sumisu-san

### Vocabulary

Howaito	White	raishū	next week
1980-nen	(the year) 1980	raigetsu	next month
-nen	year (See Appendix K.)	nan de	how, by what means
ototoi	the day before yesterday	nan-nen	what year?

### SHORT DIALOGUE

Tanaka: Kurāku-san wa itsu Nihon ni kimashita ka.

Kurāku: Kyonen no 5-gatsu 18-nichi ni kimashita.

Tanaka: Kyōto ni ikimashita ka.

Kurāku: Ee, senshū Shinkansen de ikimashita. Kin-yōbi ni Tōkyō ni kaerimashita.

Tanaka: When did you come to Japan?

Clark: I came on May 18 last year.

Tanaka: Did you go to Kyoto?

Clark: Yes, I went (there) by Shinkansen last week. I returned to Tokyo on Friday.

### Vocabulary

Shinkansen Shinkansen, New Trunk Line

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Dare ga Tanaka-san no uchi ni ikimashita ka.
2. Sumisu-san wa itsu Tanaka-san no uchi ni ikimashita ka.
3. Sumisu-san wa Tanaka-san no uchi ni densha de ikimashita ka.
4. Sumisu-san wa Tanaka-san no uchi ni nan de ikimashita ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. **Nichi-yōbi ni (       ) ni ikimashita ka.**  
**Tomodachi no uchi ni ikimashita.**
2. **Tanaka-san wa (       ) Kyōto kara kaerimashita ka.**  
**Senshū no do-yōbi ni kaerimashita.**
3. **Kurāku-san wa (       ) ni Osaka ni ikimasu ka.**  
**18-nichi ni ikimasu.**  
**(       ) de ikimasu ka.**  
**Shinkansen de ikimasu.**  
**(       ) to ikimasu ka.**  
**Hitori de ikimasu.**

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. **Watashi wa basu (       ) kaisha (       ) kimasu. Anata (       ) basu de kimasu ka.**
2. **Itsu (       ) Nihon ni kimashita ka.**  
**5-gatsu 18-nichi (       ) kimashita.**

IV Answer with the appropriate expressions in Japanese.

1. How does one greet a person one meets in the daytime?
2. What does one say to a guest who has just arrived?
3. How does one offer a chair to a guest?

V Translate into Japanese.

1. Please come this way.
2. Do come in.
3. Mr. Tanaka went home yesterday by taxi.
4. Miss White is going to the Osaka branch office on Friday.

Let's have a look at Mr. Tanaka's house.

いまに いすや テーブルや テレビが あります。テーブルの  
うえに しんぶんと はなが あります。いまに たなかさんの  
おくさんが います。にわに たなかさんと おとこの こが います。  
だいどころに だれも いません。

**Ima ni isu ya tēburu ya terebi ga arimasu. Tēburu no ue ni shimbun to hana  
ga arimasu. Ima ni Tanaka-san no okusan ga imasu. Niwa ni Tanaka-san to  
otoko no ko ga imasu. Daidokoro ni dare mo imasen.**

There is a chair, a table, a TV set (etc.) in the living room. There are some flowers and a newspaper on (top of) the table. Mrs. Tanaka is in the living room. Mr. Tanaka and a boy are in the garden. There isn't anybody in the kitchen.



## Vocabulary

いま	ima	living room
に	ni	in (particle)
いす	isu	chair
や	ya	and (etc.) (particle)
テーブル	tēburu	table
あります (ある)	arimasu (aru)	are (for inanimate things)
うえ	ue	top
と	to	and (particle)
はな	hana	flower
おくさん	okusan	(his) wife (See Note 2, p. 168.)
います (いる)	imasu (iru)	is (for living things)
にわ	niwa	garden
おとこのこ	otoko no ko	boy ( <i>lit.</i> "male child")
こ	ko	child
だいどころ	daidokoro	kitchen
だれも～ません	dare mo . . . -masen	nobody . . . is

## GRAMMAR III

---

### Lessons 8-9 Existence of People and Things

1. place NI noun GA ARIMASU/IMASU
2. noun WA place NI ARIMASU/IMASU
3. place NI WA noun GA ARIMASU/MASU

#### • Arimasu/Imasu

Both verbs express "being." **Arimasu** is used for inanimate things (books, buildings, tree, etc.) and **imasu** for animate things (people, animals, insects, etc.)

#### • Particle ni

Existence in a place is indicated by the particle **ni**, not **e**.

*ex.* Niwa ni Tanaka-san ga imasu. "Mr. Tanaka is in the garden."

#### • Particle ga. Subject marker.

When a subject is introduced for the first time, or when the speaker believes the information to be new to the listener, the subject marker **ga** is used after the noun.

*ex.* Basu ga kimasu. "The bus is coming."

Kinō Yamada-san ga kimashita. "Mr. Yamada came yesterday."

**Ga** is also used when the subject is unknown, i.e., with question words like "who" and "what." (See Note 4, below.)

*ex.* Dare ga kimashita ka. "Who came?"

**Ga** is used similarly in the reply.

*ex.* **Hayashi-san ga kimashita.** "Mr. Hayashi came."

● **Ga→wa/ni→ni wa**

For a neutral description, the following pattern is used.

*ex.* **Ikkai ni resutoran ga arimasu.** "There is a restaurant on the first floor."

When you want to talk about the restaurant, "the restaurant" becomes the topic.

*ex.* **Resutoran wa ikkai ni arimasu.** "The restaurant is on the first floor."

When you want to talk about what is on the first floor, "on the first floor" becomes the topic.

*ex.* **Ikkai ni wa resutoran ga arimasu.** "On the first floor, there is a restaurant."

● **Verb → desu**

When the verb is understood, **desu** sometimes takes its place at the end of the sentence. In Lesson 6 we see the sentence, "**Shutchō desu ka?**" and **desu** here is used in place of **shimasu**.

*ex.* **Terebi wa doko ni arimasu ka.** "Where is the TV set?"

**Tēburu no ue desu.** (for **Tēburu no ue ni arimasu.**) "It's on the table."

If it is not certain whether there is a TV or not, **desu** cannot be substituted and **arimasu** must be repeated to make the meaning clear.

*ex.* **Tēburu no ue ni terebi ga arimasu ka.** "Is there a TV set on the table?"

**Hai, arimasu./Hai, terebi ga arimasu.** "Yes, there is./Yes, there is a TV set."

In this case, one may not say: **Hai, terebi desu./Hai, tēburu no ue desu.**

## NOTES

---

1. **Ima ni isu ya tēburu ya terebi ga arimasu.**

The particle **ya** is used for "and" when listing two or more things or people and implying the existence of others as well.

2. **Tēburu no ue ni shimbun to hana ga arimasu.**

The particle **to** is used for "and" when the existence of nothing or nobody else is implied. From the Japanese sentence it is clear that there is nothing on the table besides the newspaper and the flowers. Note that unlike "and," both **to** and **ya** are used only to connect nouns. They cannot be used to connect verbs or clauses.

3. **Dare mo imasen.**

**Dare**, "who," combines with the particle **mo** to mean "nobody" when followed by a verb with the negative ending **-masen**. Similarly, **nani mo**, "nothing," and **doko ni mo**, "nowhere," take the negative verb ending **-masen**.

*ex.* **Dare mo kimasen deshita.** "Nobody came."

**Tanaka-san wa ashita doko ni mo ikimasen.** "Mr. Tanaka is not going anywhere tomorrow."

#### 4. Nani ga

Like *dare*, "who" (see Note 5, p. 55), *nani*, "what," is never followed by the topic maker *wa*. It always takes the subject marker *ga*.

*ex.* *Isu no ue ni nani ga arimasu ka.* "What is there on the chair?"  
*Hon ga arimasu.* "There is a book."

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. *Ikkai ni ima ga arimasu.*
2. *Hako no naka ni kitte to hagaki ga arimasu.*
3. *Tana no ue ni shashin ya hon ga arimasu.*
4. *Mado no chikaku ni onna no ko ga imasu.*
5. *Genkan ni dare mo imasen.*
6. *Todana no mae ni nani mo arimasen.*

1. There is a living room on the first floor.
2. There are stamps and postcards in the box.
3. There are pictures, books (etc.) on the shelf.
4. There is a girl near the window.
5. There isn't anybody in the entrance hall.
6. There isn't anything in front of the cabinet.

### Vocabulary

<b>ikkai</b>	first floor, ground floor	<b>mado</b>	window
<b>-kai</b>	floor (See Appendix I.)	<b>chikaku</b>	near, close to
<b>hako</b>	box	<b>onna no ko</b>	girl ( <i>lit.</i> "female child")
<b>naka</b>	inside	<b>genkan</b>	entrance hall
<b>hagaki</b>	postcard	<b>todana</b>	cabinet
<b>tana</b>	shelf	<b>mae</b>	in front of, before
<b>shashin</b>	photograph		

## EXERCISES

---

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their present and past forms.

	Present Form		Past Form	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
be	<b>arimasu</b>	<b>arimasen</b>	<b>arimashita</b>	<b>arimasendeshita</b>
be	<b>imasu</b>	<b>imasen</b>	<b>imashita</b>	<b>imasendeshita</b>

II Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Ima ni terebi ga arimasu.

1. todana
2. isu
3. denwa

B. *ex.* Ima ni kodomo ga imasu.

1. otoko no ko
2. onna no ko

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: Ikkai ni nani ga arimasu ka.

A: Ima ga arimasu.

1. daidokoro
2. shokudō
3. o-tearai

B. *ex.* Q: Hako no naka ni nani ga arimasu ka.

A: Hagaki to kitte ga arimasu.

1. tēburu no ue, hana to shimbun
2. tana no ue, shashin ya hon

C. *ex.* Q: Niwa ni dare ga imasu ka.

A: Otoko no ko ga imasu.

1. otoko no ko to onna no ko
2. Tanaka-san

D. *ex.* Q: Daidokoro ni dare ga imasu ka.

A: Dare mo imasen.

1. genkan
2. shokudō

E. *ex.* Q: Todana no mae ni nani ga arimasu ka.

A: Nani mo arimasen.

1. isu no ue
2. isu no shita

### Vocabulary

kodomo	child
shokudō	dining room
o-tearai	lavatory
o-	(Traditionally added to certain words to give them elegance.) (prefix)

nani mo . . . -masen	nothing is
shita	under

## SHORT DIALOGUE

---

Otoko no hito: Kono biru ni wa denwa ga arimasu ka.

Onna no hito: Hai, arimasu. Asoko ni uketsuke ga arimasu ne. Ano uketsuke no mae ni arimasu.

Otoko no hito: Dōmo arigatō.

Man: Is there a telephone in this building?

Woman: Yes, there is. There's a reception desk over there, you see? It's in front of the reception desk.

Man: Thank you.

### Vocabulary

biru	building
asoko	over there, that place (over there)
uketsuke	reception (desk)
ne	You see . . . ( <i>lit.</i> . . . "isn't there?")

## QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening text and answer the following questions.

1. Ima ni nani ga arimasu ka.
2. Tēburu no ue ni nani ga arimasu ka.
3. Ima ni dare ga imasu ka.
4. Daidokoro ni dare ga imasu ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Niwa ni ( ) ga imasu ka.  
Tanaka-san ga imasu.
2. Ima ni ( ) ga arimasu ka.  
Isu ya tēburu ga arimasu.
3. Daidokoro ni ( ) ga imasu ka.  
Dare mo imasen.
4. Isu no ue ni ( ) ga arimasu ka.  
Nani mo arimasen.

III Circle the correct verb of the two in parentheses.

1. Tana no ue ni shashin ya hon ga (arimasu, imasu).
2. Niwa ni Tanaka-san ga (arimasu, imasu).
3. Daidokoro ni dare mo (imasu, imasen).

4. **Terebi no ue ni nani mo (arimasu, arimasen).**

IV Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. **Hako (     ) naka (     ) kitte (     ) arimasu.**
2. **Tēburu (     ) ue ni hana (     ) shimbun (     ) arimasu.** (There is nothing else there besides the flowers and the newspapers.)
3. **Hako no naka ni hagaki (     ) kitte (     ) arimasu.** (There are other things besides postcards and stamps.)
4. **Genkan ni dare (     ) imasu ka.**  
**Dare (     ) imasen.**

V Translate into Japanese.

1. There are chairs, tables (etc.) in the living room.
2. In the garden (there) are Mr. Tanaka and a boy.
3. Who is in the kitchen?  
There isn't anybody (there).
4. There isn't anything on the chair.

---

LESSON  PLACE, LOCATION

---

**Mr. Smith wants to send a parcel home. He is in front of the apartment building asking the superintendent how to go about it.**

スミス： この ちかくに ゆうびんきょくが ありますか。

かんりにん： ええ、ありますよ。

スミス： どこですか。

かんりにん： あそこに スーパーが ありますね。ゆうびんきょくは  
あの スーパーの となりです。あかい ポストが あり  
ますから、わかりますよ。

スミス： どうも ありがとう。

■ゆうびんきょくは スーパーの となりです。

**Sumisu: Kono chikaku ni yūbinkyoku ga arimasu ka.**

**Kanrinin: Ee, arimasu yo.**

**Sumisu: Doko desu ka.**

**Kanrinin: Asoko ni sūpā ga arimasu ne. Yūbinkyoku wa ano sūpā no tonari desu. Akai posuto ga arimasu kara, wakarimasu yo.**

**Sumisu: Dōmo arigatō.**

■ Yūbinkyoku wa supā no tonari desu.

Smith: Is there a post office near here?

Superintendent: Yes, there is.

Smith: Where is it?

Superintendent: See that supermarket over there? The post office is next to that supermarket. There's a red mail box, so you can't miss it.

Smith: Thank you.

■ The post office is next to the supermarket.

## Vocabulary

かんりにん	kanrinin	superintendent
よ	yo	I tell you (particle)
スーパー	sūpā	supermarket
となり	tonari	next to
ポスト	posuto	mail box, post box
から	kara	so, because (particle)
わかります (わかる)	wakarimasu (wakaru)	understand, see

## NOTES

---

### 1. Ee, arimasu yo.

The particle **yo** is added to the end of a sentence to call attention to information the speaker thinks the other person does not know.

### 2. Doko desu ka.

The same as **doko ni arimasu ka**. **Desu** is used in place of **ni arimasu**. (See Grammar III, p. 66.)

### 3. Asoko ni sūpā ga arimasu ne.

“See that supermarket over there?” (*lit.* “There’s a supermarket over there, isn’t there?”)

The particle **ne** comes at the end of a sentence or phrase and, like “you see?” or “isn’t there/it?” in English, seeks the confirmation and agreement of the other person. The particle **yo** *tells*, while the particle **ne** *asks*.

### 4. Akai posuto ga arimasu kara

The particle **kara** means “because, so, therefore” and comes after the phrase or clause. The Japanese meaning can be expressed in English in two ways: “Because there’s a red mail box,” or “There’s a red mail box, so . . .”

### 5. Dōshite, “why”

*ex.* **Dōshite byōin wa 12-ji made desu ka.** Why is the hospital (only open) until 12 o’clock?

**Kyō wa do-yōbi desu kara.** “Because today is Saturday.”

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Eki no chikaku ni tatemono ga takusan arimasu.**

2. **Hon-ya no mae ni kodomo ga 5-nin imasu.**

3. Takushī-noriba wa eki no mae desu.

4. Kyō wa do-yōbi desu kara, byōin wa 12-ji made desu.

1. There are many buildings near the station.

2. There are 5 children in front of the book store.

3. The taxi stand is in front of the station.

4. Today is Saturday, so the hospital is (only open) until 12:00.

### Vocabulary

tatemono	building	takushī-noriba	taxi stand
takusan	many, lots of	noriba	lit. "boarding place"
hon-ya	book store	byōin	hospital
5-nin	5 people		
-nin	(counter for people)		
	(See Appendix I.)		

### EXERCISES

I Practice the following patterns by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. ex. Tēburu no ue ni ringo ga itsutsu arimasu.

1. hagaki, 3-mai

2. biru, 2-hon

3. hana, takusan

B. ex. Niwa ni otoko no ko ga futari imasu.

1. onna no ko, 3-nin

2. otoko no hito, hitori

II Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. ex. Q: Tēburu no ue ni ringo ga ikutsu arimasu ka.

A: Mittsu arimasu.

1. hagaki, nan-mai, 3-mai

2. biru, nan-bon, 2-hon

3. hana, nan-bon, takusan

B. ex. Q: Niwa ni otoko no hito ga nan-nin imasu ka.

A: Hitori imasu.

1. onna no ko, 3-nin

2. otoko no ko, futari

C. ex. Q: Kono chikaku ni takushi-noriba ga arimasu ka.

A: Hai, arimasu. Takushi-noriba wa eki no mae ni arimasu.

1. kippu-uriba, eki no naka

2. chikatetsu no iriguchi, depāto no mae

3. byōin, asoko

4. kusuri-ya, soko

D. ex. Q: Kuruma no kagi wa doko ni arimasu ka.

A: Koko ni arimasu.

1. watashi no megane
2. kono heya no kagi

E. ex. Q: Tanaka-san wa doko ni imasu ka.

A: 2-kai ni imasu.

1. niwa
2. tonari no heya

F. ex. Q: Basu-noriba wa doko desu ka.

A: Eki no mae desu.

1. hon-ya, depāto no tonari
2. kaisatsuguchi, eki no naka
3. kusuri-ya, kōban no tonari
4. byōin, eki no chikaku



III A. Connect the following sentences using **kara**, "because," as in the example given.

ex. **Kyō wa yasumi desu. Watashi wa gakkō ni ikimasen.**

**Kyō wa yasumi desu kara, watashi wa gakkō ni ikimasen.**

1. **Kyō wa nichiyōbi desu. Watashi wa kaisha ni ikimasen.**

B. Read the short dialogues and make the appropriate statements (S) using **kara**.

*ex.* Q: Dōshite kyō byōin wa 12-ji made desu ka.

A: Kyō wa do-yōbi desu kara.

S: Kyō wa do-yōbi desu kara, byōin wa 12-ji made desu.

1. Q: Dōshite anata wa kyō gakkō ni ikimasen ka.

A: Kyō wa nichiyōbi desu kara.

S:

2. Q: Dōshite Sumisu-san wa kūkō ni ikimasu ka.

A: Okusan ga hikōki de kimasu kara.

S:

### Vocabulary

<b>futari</b>	2 people (See Appendix I.)	<b>yaoya</b>	vegetable store
		<b>sakana-ya</b>	fish store
<b>hitori</b>	1 person	<b>sakana</b>	fish
<b>ikutsu</b>	how many	<b>pan-ya</b>	bread store, bakery
<b>nan-mai</b>	how many sheets	<b>pan</b>	bread
<b>nan-bon</b>	how many bottles	<b>saka-ya</b>	liquor store
<b>nan-nin</b>	how many people	<b>soko</b>	there, that place
<b>kippu-uriba</b>	ticket office	<b>koko</b>	here, this place
<b>kippu</b>	ticket	<b>megane</b>	(eye) glasses
<b>-uriba</b>	<i>lit.</i> "selling place"	<b>heya</b>	room
<b>iriguchi</b>	entrance	<b>basu-noriba</b>	bus terminal
<b>byōin</b>	hospital	<b>kaisatsuguchi</b>	ticket gate
<b>kusuri-ya</b>	pharmacy, drug store	<b>kōban</b>	police box
<b>kusuri</b>	medicine	<b>yasumi</b>	holiday
<b>niku-ya</b>	meat store	<b>dōshite</b>	why
<b>niku</b>	meat	<b>hikōki</b>	airplane

### SHORT DIALOGUE

**Sumisu:** Kyō no shimbun wa doko ni arimasu ka.

**Yamada:** Koko ni arimasu. Hai, dōzo.

**Smith:** Where is today's paper?

**Yamada:** It's here. Here you are.

## QUIZ ■■■■■■■■■■

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Sumisu-san wa doko ni ikimasu ka.
2. Yūbinkyoku wa sūpā no mae desu ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Takushi-noriba wa (      ) desu ka.  
Asoko desu.
2. Eki no chikaku ni (      ) ga arimasu ka.  
Basu-noriba ya yūbinkyoku ya depāto ga arimasu.
3. Hon-ya wa (      ) ni arimasu ka.  
Sūpā no tonari ni arimasu.
4. (      ) Narita Kūkō ni ikimasu ka.  
Tomodachi ga kimasu kara.
5. Tēburu no ue ni ringo ga (      ) arimasu ka.  
Mittsu arimasu.
6. Eki no mae ni otoko no hito ga (      ) imasu ka.  
Futari imasu.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Basu-noriba (      ) doko (      ) desu ka.  
Depāto (      ) mae (      ) arimasu.
2. Tēburu no ue (      ) biru ga nan-bon (      ) arimasu ka.  
2-hon (      ) arimasu.
3. Dōshite kyō kaisha (      ) ikimasen ka.  
Do-yōbi desu (      ).
4. O-tearai (      ) doko (      ) arimasu ka.  
Asoko desu.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. The liquor store is next to the vegetable store.
2. Excuse me, where is the lavatory?  
It's over there.
3. Miss White went to Osaka, so she isn't in the office today.
4. Why is the hospital (only open) until 12:00 today?  
Because it's Saturday.
5. There are five children in front of the book store.

---

# LESSON 10 TICKETS BOUGHT

---

**Mr. Smith and Mr. Tanaka are talking about their plans for the weekend.**

たなか：しゅうまつに なにを しますか。

スミス：にちようびに ともだちと かぶきを みます。

たなか：いいですね。もう きっぷを かいましたか。

スミス：ええ、せんしゅう ぎんざの プレイガイドで かいました。

■スミスさんは せんしゅう ぎんざの プレイガイドで かぶきの きっぷを かいました。にちようびに ともだちと かぶきを みます。

**Tanaka: Shūmatsu ni nani o shimasu ka.**

**Sumisu: Nichi-yōbi ni tomodachi to kabuki o mimasu.**

**Tanaka: Ii desu ne. Mō kippu o kaimashita ka.**

**Sumisu: Ee, senshū Ginza no pureigaido de kaimashita.**

■ **Sumisu-san wa senshū Ginza no pureigaido de kabuki no kippu o kaimashita. Nichi-yōbi ni tomodachi to kabuki o mimasu.**

Tanaka: What are you doing this weekend?

Smith: I'm going to see the Kabuki with friends on Sunday.

Tanaka: How nice. Have you bought your tickets yet?

Smith: Yes, I bought them last week at a theater booking agency in the Ginza.

■ **Mr. Smith bought tickets for the Kabuki at a theater booking agency in the Ginza last week. He is going to see the Kabuki with friends on Sunday.**

## Vocabulary

しゅうまつ  
します (する)  
かぶき  
みます (みる)

shūmatsu	weekend
shimasu (suru)	do
kabuki	Kabuki (Japanese theater)
mimasu (miru)	see

いいですね	<b>ii desu ne</b>	<i>lit.</i> It's nice (good, all right).
いい	<b>ii</b>	good (-i adj.)
もう	<b>mō</b>	already
かいました	<b>kaimashita</b>	bought
かいます (かう)	<b>kaimasu (kau)</b>	buy
ぎんざ	<b>Ginza</b>	Ginza (place name)
プレイガイド	<b>pureigaido</b>	theater booking agency
で	<b>de</b>	at (particle)

## GRAMMAR IV

### Lessons 10-12 . . . O verb/ . . . NI . . . O verb

1. person WA noun O verb
2. person WA person NI noun O verb

#### • Verbs

	Present Form		Past Form	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
see	<b>mi-masu</b>	<b>mi-masen</b>	<b>mi-mashita</b>	<b>mi-masendeshita</b>
buy	<b>kai-masu</b>	<b>kai-masen</b>	<b>kai-mashita</b>	<b>kai-masendeshita</b>
read	<b>yomi-masu</b>	<b>yomi-masen</b>	<b>yomi-mashita</b>	<b>yomi-masendeshita</b>
show	<b>mise-masu</b>	<b>mise-masen</b>	<b>mise-mashita</b>	<b>mise-masendeshita</b>
tele- phone	<b>denwa o shi-masu</b>	<b>denwa o shi-masen</b>	<b>denwa o shi- mashita</b>	<b>denwa o shi-masen deshita</b>

#### • Particle o. Object marker.

Placed after a noun, **o** indicates that the noun is the object. **O** is used with verbs such as “see,” “read,” “drink,” “buy” and many others.

*ex.* **Terebi o mimasu**, “(I) watch TV.”

#### • Particle ni. Indirect object marker.

In Japanese, the indirect object, or recipient, in the case of verbs such as “give,” “teach,” “telephone” and so on is indicated by the particle **ni**.

*ex.* **Hayashi-san wa Sumisu-san ni denwa o shimashita**. “Mr. Hayashi telephoned Mr. Smith.”

## NOTES

---

### 1. **Ii desu ne.**

Here the particle **ne** does not seek confirmation or agreement. It is a sharing of the other persons's pleasure. Nuances can be conveyed by the amount of stress given any syllable. Compare this **ne** with the **ne** in Lesson 9.

### 2. **Ginza no pureigaido de kaimashita.**

Nouns and place names concerned with actions such as where things are bought, seen, eaten and so on take the particle **de**.

### 3. **Doko, "where"**

*ex.* **Doko de terebi o mimasu ka.** "Where do you watch television?"  
**Ima de mimasu.** "I watch it in the living room."

### 4. **Nani, "what"**

*ex.* **Nani o kaimashita ka.** "What did you buy?"  
**Kippu o kaimashita.** "I bought a/some ticket/tickets."

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **[Watashi wa] Ashita eiga o mimasu.**
2. **Tanaka-san wa mainichi uchi de benkyō o shimasu.**
3. **[Watashi wa] Kinō resutoran de hiru-gohan o tabemashita.**
4. **[Watashi wa] Kinō depāto de nani mo kaimasendeshita.**

1. I am going to see a movie tomorrow.
2. Mr. Tanaka studies at home every day.
3. I had lunch at a restaurant yesterday.
4. I didn't buy anything yesterday at the department store.

### Vocabulary

<b>mainichi</b>	every day	<b>resutoran</b>	restaurant
<b>mai-</b>	every (See Appendix K.)	<b>hiru-gohan</b>	lunch
		<b>gohan</b>	meal
<b>benkyō o shimasu</b>	study	<b>tabemashita</b>	ate
<b>(benkyō o suru)</b>		<b>tabemasu (taberu)</b>	eat

## EXERCISES

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their present and past forms.

	Present Form		Past Form	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
see	<b>mimasu</b>	<b>mimasen</b>	<b>mimashita</b>	<b>mimasendeshita</b>
listen	<b>kikimasu</b>	<b>kikimasen</b>	<b>kikimashita</b>	<b>kikimasendeshita</b>
eat	<b>tabemasu</b>	<b>tabemasen</b>	<b>tabemashita</b>	<b>tabemasendeshita</b>
drink	<b>nomimasu</b>	<b>nomimasen</b>	<b>nomimashita</b>	<b>nomimasendeshita</b>
buy	<b>kaimasu</b>	<b>kaimasen</b>	<b>kaimashita</b>	<b>kaimasendeshita</b>
read	<b>yomimasu</b>	<b>yomimasen</b>	<b>yomimashita</b>	<b>yomimasendeshita</b>
study	<b>benkyō o shimasu</b>	<b>shimasen</b>	<b>shimashita</b>	<b>shimasendeshita</b>
shop	<b>kaimono o shimasu</b>	<b>shimasen</b>	<b>shimashita</b>	<b>shimasendeshita</b>
give a party	<b>pāti o shimasu</b>	<b>shimasen</b>	<b>shimashita</b>	<b>shimasendeshita</b>
work	<b>shigoto o shimasu</b>	<b>shimasen</b>	<b>shimashita</b>	<b>shimasendeshita</b>
play tennis	<b>tenisu o shimasu</b>	<b>shimasen</b>	<b>shimashita</b>	<b>shimasendeshita</b>

II Practice the following patterns by changing the underlined part as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Eiga o mimasu.

1. terebi
2. kabuki
3. e

B. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Rajio o kikimasu.

1. nyūsu
2. ongaku no tēpu
3. rekōdo ya shīdī

C. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Hiru-gohan o tabemasu.

1. asa-gohan
2. ban-gohan
3. sandoitchi to sarada

D. *ex.* [Watashi wa] O-cha o nomimasu.

1. o-sake
2. sūpu
3. kusuri

E. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Hana o kaimasu.

1. zasshi
2. kitte
3. Nihon no chizu

F. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Hon o yomimasu.

1. tegami
2. Nihon-go no shimbun

G. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Benkyō o shimasu.

1. kaimono
2. pāti
3. shigoto
4. tenisu

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given. Convert verbs to their appropriate form as necessary.

A. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Komaban eiga o mimasu ka.

Aa: Hai, mimasu.

Aa: Iie, mimasen.

1. hon, yomimasu
2. Nihon-go no benkyō, shimasu

B. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Kinō hon-ya de hon o kaimashita ka.

Aa: Hai, kaimashita.

Aa: Iie, kaimasendeshita.

1. kaisha, shigoto, shimasu
2. kissaten, kōhi, nomimasu

C. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Maiasa nani o nomimasu ka.

A: Kōhi o nomimasu.

1. kōcha
2. miruku
3. jūsu to kōhi

D. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Kinō nani o shimashita ka.

A: Uchi de hon o yomimashita.

1. depāto de kutsu o kaimasu
2. uchi de Nihon-go no benkyō o shimasu
3. byōin ni ikimasu

E. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Kyō doko de hiru-gohan o tabemasu ka.

A: Uchi de tabemasu.

1. eki no chikaku no resutoran
2. tomodachi no uchi

F. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Itsu Nihon-go no benkyō o shimasu ka.

A: Mainichi shimasu.

1. maiban
2. getsu-yōbi to ka-yōbi ni
3. maishū ka-yōbi ni

G. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Shūmatsu ni dare to tennis o shimasu ka.

A: Tanaka-san to shimasu.

1. tomodachi
2. kazoku

H. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Depāto de nani o kaimashita ka.

A: Nani mo kaimasendeshita.

1. tabemasu
2. nomimasu

### Vocabulary

e	picture	zasshi	magazine
kikimasu (kiku)	listen	chizu	map
nyūsu	news	yomimasu (yomu)	read
ongaku	music	tegami	letter
rekōdo	record	kaimono	shopping
shīdī	CD, compact disc	tenisu	tennis
asa-gohan	breakfast ( <i>lit.</i> “morning meal”)	komban	this evening
asa	morning	kissaten	coffee shop
ban-gohan	dinner ( <i>lit.</i> “evening meal”)	kōhī	coffee
ban	evening	nomimasu (nomu)	drink
sandoitchi	sandwich	maiasa	every morning
sarada	salad	kōcha	black tea
o-cha	tea	miruku	milk
cha	tea	jūsu	juice
o-sake	Japanese rice wine	kutsu	shoes
sake	Japanese rice wine	maiban	every evening
sūpu	soup	maishū	every week
		kazoku	(my) family

### SHORT DIALOGUE

---

Hayashi: Kinō Nihon-go no benkyō o shimashita ka.

Howaito: Iie, shimasendeshita.

Hayashi: Dōshite benkyō o shimasendeshita ka.

Howaito: Tomodachi ga uchi ni kimashita kara.

Hayashi: Did you study Japanese yesterday?

White: No, I didn't.

Hayashi: Why didn't you study?

White: Because some friends came to my house.

## QUIZ ■■■■■

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Sumisu-san wa nichiyōbi ni eiga o mimasu ka, kabuki o mimasu ka.
2. Sumisu-san wa hitori de kabuki o mimasu ka.
3. Sumisu-san wa itsu kabuki no kippu o kaimashita ka.
4. Sumisu-san wa doko de kabuki no kippu o kaimashita ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. (     ) ni eiga o mimashita ka.  
Nichiyōbi ni mimashita.
2. Kyō (     ) de hiru-gohan o tabemasu ka.  
Eki no chikaku no resutoran de tabemasu.
3. Do-yōbi ni (     ) o shimasu ka.  
Tomodachi no uchi ni ikimasu. Soshite tomodachi no uchi de bangohan o tabemasu.
4. Depāto de (     ) o kaimashita ka.  
Nani mo kaimasen deshita.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Sumisu-san wa shokudō (     ) imasu.
2. Howaito-san wa chikatetsu (     ) kaisha (     ) ikimasu.
3. Tanaka-san wa kaisha no chikaku no resutoran (     ) hiru-gohan (     ) tabemashita.
4. Watashi wa kinō depāto (     ) nani (     ) kaimasen deshita.
5. Shūmatsu ni nani (     ) shimasu ka.
6. Watashi wa maiasa (     ) uchi (     ) shimbun (     ) yomimasu.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. I bought a camera at the department store on Sunday. It was ¥45,000.
2. What did you do yesterday?  
I listened to a tape of Japanese at home in the morning. I went to the Ginza in the afternoon and bought a camera (there).
3. Miss White doesn't eat anything in the morning.

---

# LESSON 11 READING REVIEW

---

ブラウンさんは ABCの べんごしです。そして スミスさんの  
ともだちです。ブラウンさんは ことしの 6がつに ひとりで にほん  
に きました。おくさんは らいしゅう にほんに きます。

ブラウンさんの かいしゃは とうきょうえきの ちかくに あります。  
しごとは げつようびから きんようびまでです。

ブラウンさんは まいあさ コーヒーを のみますが、なにも たべ  
ません。そして しんぶんを よみます。ちかてつで かいしゃに  
いきます。ときどき ちかてつで ほんや ざっしを よみます。

かいしゃは 9じから 5じはんまでです。レストランや かいしゃの  
しょくどうで ひるごはんを たべます。ひるやすみは 12じはんから  
2じまでですから、ときどき かいしゃの ひとと デパートや  
きっさてんに いきます。

うちに 7じごろ かえります。きのうは かいしゃから スミスさ  
んの うちに きましたから、11じごろ うちに かえりました。

ブラウンさんは あした しんかんせんで きょうとに いきます。  
きょうとの ししゃで かいぎを します。そして きんようびに  
とうきょうに かえります。

**Buraun-san wa ABC no bengoshi desu. Soshite Sumisu-san no tomodachi  
desu. Buraun-san wa kotoshi no 6-gatsu ni hitori de Nihon ni kimashita.  
Okusan wa raishū Nihon ni kimasu.**

**Buraun-san no kaisha wa Tōkyō Eki no chikaku ni arimasu. Shigoto wa  
getsu-yōbi kara kin-yōbi made desu.**

**Buraun-san wa maiasa kōhi o nomimasu ga, nani mo tabemasen. Soshite  
shimbun o yomimasu. Chikatetsu de kaisha ni ikimasu. Tokidoki chikatetsu  
de hon ya zasshi o yomimasu.**

**Kaisha wa 9-ji kara 5-ji han made desu. Resutoran ya kaisha no shokudō de  
hiru-gohan o tabemasu. Hiru-yasumi wa 12-ji han kara 2-ji made desu kara,  
tokidoki kaisha no hito to depāto ya kissaten ni ikimasu.**

**Uchi ni 7-ji goro kaerimasu. Kinō wa kaisha kara Sumisu-san no uchi ni ikimashita kara, 11-ji goro uchi ni kaerimashita.**

**Buraun-san wa ashita Shinkansen de Kyōto ni ikimasu. Kyōto no shisha de kaigi o shimasu. Soshite kin-yōbi ni Tōkyō ni kaerimasu.**

Mr. Brown is a lawyer with ABC. And he is a friend of Mr. Smith's. Mr. Brown came to Japan alone this June. His wife will come to Japan next week.

Mr. Brown's company is near Tokyo Station. He works from Monday to Friday.

Mr. Brown drinks coffee every morning, but he doesn't eat anything. And he reads the paper. He goes to his office by subway. Sometimes he reads a book or a magazine on the subway.

His office hours are from 9:00 to 5:30. He has lunch at a restaurant or in the company cafeteria. Lunch time is from 12:30 to 2:00, so sometimes he goes to a department store or a cafe with people from the office.

He gets home about 7:00. Last night he got home about 11:00 because he went from the office to the Smiths' house.

Mr. Brown is going to Kyoto tomorrow on the Shinkansen. He is holding a meeting at the branch office in Kyoto. He will return to Tokyo on Friday.

### Vocabulary

ブラウン	<b>Buraun</b>	Brown
ことし	<b>kotoshi</b>	this year
が	<b>ga</b>	but (particle)
ときどき	<b>tokidoki</b>	sometimes (See Appendix J.)
しょくどう	<b>shokudō</b>	cafeteria
7じごろ	<b>7-ji goro</b>	about 7:00
～ごろ	<b>goro</b>	about
かいぎを します (かいぎを する)	<b>kaigi o shimasu (kaigi o suru)</b>	hold a meeting/conference

---

# LESSON 12 TELEPHONING

---

## Mr. Katō telephones Mr. Smith.

かとう：もしもし、スミスさんの おたくですか。

スミス：はい、そうです。

かとう：かとうですが、ごしゅじんは いらっしゃいますか。

スミス：いま いません。9じごろ かえります。

かとう：そうですか。では また あとで でんわを します。

スミス：はい、おねがいします。

かとう：しつれいします。

スミス：さようなら。

■かとうさんは スミスさんの うちに でんわを しましたが、スミスさんの ごしゅじんは いませんでした。

**Katō:** Moshi moshi, Sumisu-san no o-taku desu ka.

**Sumisu:** Hai, sō desu.

**Katō:** Katō desu ga, go-shujin wa irasshaimasu ka.

**Sumisu:** Ima imasen. 9-ji goro kaerimasu.

**Katō:** Sō desu ka. Dewa mata ato de denwa o shimasu.

**Sumisu:** Hai, onegaishimasu.

**Katō:** Shitsurei shimasu.

**Sumisu:** Sayōnara.

■ **Katō-san wa Sumisu-san no uchi ni denwa o shimashita ga, Sumisu-san no go-shujin wa imasendeshita.**

**Katō:** Hello. Is that Mr. Smith's residence?

**Smith:** Yes, it is.

**Katō:** This is Katō. Is your husband there?

**Smith:** He's not here now. He'll be back about 9:00.

**Katō:** I see. Then I'll call again later.

**Smith:** Yes. Please do.

**Katō:** Good-bye.

**Smith:** Good-bye.

■ Mr. Katō telephoned the Smiths' house but Mr. Smith was not there.

## Vocabulary

かとう	Katō	a surname
もしもし	moshi moshi	hello
おたく	o-taku	(his) residence
が	ga	(particle) (See Note 3 below.)
ごしゅじん	go-shujin	(your) husband
ご〜	go-	(honorific, referring to someone else's . . .)
いらっしゃいます (いらっしゃる)	irasshaimasu (irassharu)	is (polite word for imasu)
そうですか	sō desu ka	I see.
また	mata	again
あとで	ato de	afterwards
おねがいします	onegaishimasu	Please (do).
しつれいします	shitsurei shimasu	good-bye ( <i>lit.</i> "I'll be rude.")
に	ni	to (particle)

## NOTES

---

### 1. Moshi moshi.

This is the conventional beginning of a telephone conversation and may be repeated during the call to confirm whether the other party is still on the line. It is sometimes also like "I say!" used to attract the attention of someone one does not know. (See Lesson 24.) It is best to confine its use to the telephone.

### 2. Sumisu-san no o-taku

The honorific **o** (or **go** as in **go-shujin**) is often prefixed to nouns to mean "your," i.e., **o-namae**, "your name." Similarly, **o-taku** means "your house," or, as here, "Mr. Smith's residence." It is very polite.

The word **taku** alone is seldom used. **Uchi**, "house," is more common. I.e., **Are wa dare no uchi desu ka**. "Whose house is that?" **Uchi** is also used to mean "my/our house" or simply "our," as in **uchi no kuruma**, "our car."

### 3. A. Katō desu ga, go-shujin wa irasshaimasu ka.

B. Katō-san wa Sumisu-san ni denwa o shimashita ga, Sumisu-san wa imasendeshita.

This **ga** is a connective, joining two clauses. It can usually be translated as "but," as in B, but sometimes it cannot, as in A. In A, it has no particular meaning. It is just a kind of courteous hesitation and indicates that the phrase before it is merely a preliminary to the principal matter.

#### 4. 9-ji goro

The suffix **goro**, “about,” is used to indicate approximate time.

*ex.* **3-ji goro**, “about 3 o’clock”

**9-gatsu goro**, “about September”

#### 5. Sō desu ka.

When **Sō desu ka** means “I see,” as here, it is said with a falling intonation. It can also mean “Oh, really?” or “Is that so?” and be a question expecting an answer. In that case, it is said with a rising intonation.

#### 6. Onegaishimasu

A very convenient phrase, used when making a request. Literally, it means “I beg you,” and the verb may be simply implied, as here, where it means “I beg you (to do that).”

*ex.* **Taipu o onegaishimasu.** “Could you type this, please?”

**Ginza made onegaishimasu.** “Please take me to the Ginza.” (Said to a taxi driver.)

The reply to **onegaishimasu** is often **Hai, wakarimashita.** “Certainly./I see.”

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. [Watashi wa] Ashita bengoshi ni aimasu.
2. [Watashi wa] Hayashi-san ni denwa o shimasu.
3. [Watashi wa] Yoku tomodachi ni tegami o kakimasu.
4. [Watashi wa] Amari eiga o mimasen.
5. [Watashi wa] Sumisu-san no kaisha ni denwa o shimashita ga, Sumisu-san wa imasendeshita.

1. I am going to see the lawyer tomorrow.
2. I will telephone Mr. Hayashi.
3. I often write to (my) friends.
4. I don't see movies very often.
5. I telephoned Mr. Smith's office, but he wasn't there.

### Vocabulary

<b>aimasu (au)</b>	meet
<b>denwa o shimasu</b> (denwa o suru)	make a phone call
<b>yoku</b>	often (See Appendix J.)
<b>kakimasu (kaku)</b>	write
<b>amari . . . -masen</b>	does not . . . often (See Appendix J.)

## EXERCISES

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their present and past forms.

	Present Form		Past Form	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
telephone	denwa o shimasu	shimasen	shimashita	shimasendeshita
write	kakimasu	kakimasen	kakimashita	kakimasendeshita
ask	kikimasu	kikimasen	kikimashita	kikimasendeshita
tell	oshiemasu	oshiemasen	oshiemashita	oshiemasendeshita
meet	aimasu	aimasen	aimashita	aimasendeshita

II Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

ex. [Watashi wa] Hayashi-san ni denwa o shimasu.

1. Sumisu-san
2. gakkō
3. kaisha

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Mainen tomodachi ni kurisumasu kâdo o kakimasu ka.

Aa: Hai, kakimasu.

An: Iie, kakimasen.

1. nengajō

B. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Dare ni denwa o shimasu ka.

A: Tanaka-san ni shimasu.

1. tomodachi
2. haha

C. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Doko ni denwa o shimasu ka.

A: Kaisha ni shimasu.

1. gakkō
2. hoteru

D. ex. Q: Tanaka-san wa Sumisu-san ni nani o oshiemashita ka.

A: Tanaka-san no uchi no denwa-bangō o oshiemashita.

1. mise no namae
2. naisen-bangō

E. ex. Q: Tanaka-san wa dare ni Hayashi-san no jūsho o kikimashita ka.

A: Hisho ni kikimashita.

1. Sumisu-san
2. kaisha no hito

F. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Ashita dare ni aimasu ka.

A: Tomodachi ni aimasu.

1. gakkō no sensei
2. Hayashi-san no otōsan to okāsan

G. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Yoku tomodachi ni tegami o kakimasu ka.

Aa: Hai, yoku kakimasu.

An: Iie, amari kakimasen.

1. hai, tokidoki. iie, zenzen

IV Connect the following sentences using *ga*, “but,” as in the example given.

ex. Ashita wa nichiyōbi desu. [Watashi wa] Kaisha de shigoto o shimasu.

Ashita wa nichiyōbi desu *ga*, [watashi wa] kaisha de shigoto o shimasu.

1. Watashi wa kinō Tanaka-san no uchi ni ikimashita. Tanaka-san wa ima sendeshita.
2. Watashi wa kinō depāto ni ikimashita. Depāto wa yasumi deshita.

### Vocabulary

mainen	every year	naisen-bangō	extension number
kurisumasu kādo	Christmas card		
nengajō	New Year's card	kikimasu (kiku)	ask
haha	(my) mother	sensei	teacher
hoteru	hotel	otōsan	(your) father
oshiemasu (oshieru)	tell	okāsan	(your) mother
mise	store, shop	zenzen . . . -masen	never (do) (See Appendix J.)

### SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. On the telephone.

Otoko no hito: Moshi moshi, Tanaka-san no o-taku desu ka.

Onna no hito: Iie, chigaimasu.

Otoko no hito: Dōmo sumimasen.

Onna no hito: Iie. Dō itashimashite.

Man: Hello. Is this Mr. Tanaka's residence?

Woman: No, you have the wrong number.

Man: Sorry to have troubled you.

Woman: That's quite all right.

2. On the telephone.

Kōkanshu: Tōkyō Denki de gozaimasu.

Hayashi: Tanaka-san o onegaishimasu.

Kōkanshu: Hai, shōshō omachi kudasai.

Operator: This is Tokyo Electric.

Hayashi: May I speak to Mr. Tanaka, please?

Operator: Just a moment, please.

3. Sumisu: **Watashi wa maiasa jogingu o shimasu ga, Hayashi-san mo jogingu o shimasu ka.**

Hayashi: **Hai, watashi mo yoku shimasu.**

Smith: I jog every morning. Do you jog, too?

Hayashi: Yes, I often do.

### Vocabulary

chigaimasu (chigau)	That's wrong.
kōkanshu	switchboard operator
Tōkyō Denki de gozaimasu	This is Tokyo Electric.
de gozaimasu	(polite word for desu)
shōshō	a moment
omachi kudasai	Please wait.
machimasu (matsu)	wait
jogingu o shimasu	jog
(jogingu o suru)	

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. **Dare ga Sumisu-san no uchi ni denwa o shimashita ka.**
2. **Sumisu-san no go-shujin wa uchi ni imashita ka, imasendeshita ka.**
3. **Sumisu-san no go-shujin wa nan-ji goro uchi ni kaerimasu ka.**
4. **Katō-san wa mata ato de Sumisu-san ni denwa o shimasu ka.**

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. **Kinō ( ) o shimashita ka.**  
**Tegami o kakimashita.**  
**( ) ni kakimashita ka.**  
**Haha ni kakimashita.**
2. **Hayashi-san wa ( ) ni Kurāku-san no jūsho o kikimashita ka.**  
**Howaito-san ni kikimashita.**

3. (       ) ga Kyōto no shisha ni denwa o shimashita ka.  
Sumisu-san ga shimashita.

III Circle the correct word of the two in parentheses.

1. Yoku kono resutoran ni kimasu ka.  
(Hai, Iie), amari (kimasu, kimasen).
2. Yoku terebi o (mimasu, mimasen) ka.  
(Hai, Iie), zenzen (mimasu, mimasen).
3. Yamada-san wa (yoku, amari) tomodachi ni denwa o shimasu.
4. Sumisu-san wa yoku densha de shimbun o (yomimasu, yomimasen) ga, Kurāku-san wa zenzen (yomimasu, yomimasen).

IV Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Sumisu-san wa Hayashi-san (       ) denwa o shimashita.
2. Doko (       ) denwa o shimasu ka.  
Gakkō ni shimasu.
3. Yoku (       ) dare (       ) tenisu o shimasu ka.  
Kazoku to shimasu.
4. Tanaka-san wa Howaito-san (       ) Yamada-san no uchi no denwa-bangō (       ) oshiemashita.
5. Moshi moshi, Sumisu desu (       ), Hayashi-san (       ) irasshaimasu ka.

V Translate into Japanese.

1. Hello. Is this the Tanaka residence?
2. This is Tanaka of Tokyo Electric. Is Mr. Hayashi there?
3. I'll call again later.
4. I asked Mr. Clark for his office telephone number.
5. Mr. Clark doesn't write letters to his friends very often but Miss White does (write often).

---

# LESSON 13 DELICIOUS CAKES

---

**Mr. Tanaka is offering Mr. Smith a cup of tea.**

たなか：おちゃを どうぞ。

スミス：ありがとうございます。

たなか：おかしは いかがですか。

スミス：はい、いただきます。きれいな おかしですね。にほんの  
おかしですか。

たなか：ええ、そうです。どうぞ めしあがってください。

スミス：とても おいしいです。

たなか：おちゃを もう いっぱい いかがですか。

スミス：いいえ、もう けっこうです。

■スミスさんは たなかさんの うちで きれいな にほんの おかし  
を たべました。おちゃを いっぱい のみしました。

**Tanaka: O-cha o dōzo.**

**Sumisu: Arigatō gozaimasu.**

**Tanaka: O-kashi wa ikaga desu ka.**

**Sumisu: Hai, itadakimasu. Kireina o-kashi desu ne. Nihon no o-kashi desu ka.**

**Tanaka: Ee, sō desu. Dōzo meshiagatte kudasai.**

**Sumisu: Totemo oishii desu.**

**Tanaka: O-cha o mō ippai ikaga desu ka.**

**Sumisu: Iie, mō kekkō desu.**

■Sumisu-san wa Tanaka-san no uchi de kireina Nihon no o-kashi o tabe-  
mashita. O-cha o ippai nomimashita.

Tanaka: Do have some tea.

Smith: Thank you.

Tanaka: Will you have a cake?

Smith: Yes, I'd love one. What pretty cakes! Are they Japanese cakes?

Tanaka: Yes, they are. Please, help yourself.

Smith: They are delicious.

Tanaka: Will you have another cup of tea?

Smith: No (thank you). That was enough.

- Mr. Smith ate (some) pretty Japanese cakes at Mr. Tanaka's house. He drank a cup of tea.

### Vocabulary

おかし	<b>o-kashi</b>	cake
いかがですか	<b>ikaga desu ka</b>	<u>How about . . . ?</u>
いかが	<b>ikaga</b>	how
いただきます(いただく)	<b>itadakimasu (itadaku)</b>	eat (polite word for <b>tabemasu</b> )
きれい(な)	<b>kireina</b>	pretty, clean ( <b>-na</b> adj.)
めしあがって ください	<b>meshiagatte kudasai</b>	Please eat/have (some)
とても	<b>totemo</b>	very (See Appendix J.)
おいしい	<b>oishii</b>	good, tasty ( <b>-i</b> adj.)
もう	<b>mō</b>	more (another)
1 ぱい	<b>ippai</b>	1 cupful
~はい、ぱい、ぱい	<b>-hai, -bai, -pai</b>	(counter. See Appendix I.)
いいえ、もう けっこうです	<b>ie, mō kekkō desu</b>	<u>No (thank you). That was enough.</u>

## GRAMMAR V

### Lessons 13–14 Adjectives

1. ADJECTIVE + noun
2. noun wa ADJECTIVE desu

1. Modifying Nouns: Adjective + Noun		
<b>-i</b> adj.	<b>ōkii kōen</b>	big park
<b>-na</b> adj.	<b>yūmeina kōen</b>	famous park

2. Adjective as Predicate: Adjective + Desu				
	Present Form		Past Form	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
<b>-i</b> adj.	<b>ōkii desu</b>	<b>ōkikunai desu</b>	<b>ōkikatta desu</b>	<b>ōkikunakatta desu</b>
<b>-na</b> adj.	<b>yūmei desu</b>	<b>yūmei dewa arimasen</b>	<b>yūmei deshita</b>	<b>yūmei dewa arimasendeshita</b>

- Japanese adjectives can either modify nouns by immediately preceding them or act as predicates. In this they resemble English.  
There are two kinds of adjectives: **-i** adjectives and **-na** adjectives. Unlike English adjectives, Japanese adjectives are inflected as shown above. Either **-i** or **-na** adjectives can take the place of noun 2 in the noun 2 + **desu** construction given in Grammar I.

## NOTES

---

### 1. Dōzo.

**Dōzo**, “please (accept/do),” is used when making an offer to someone or when begging their kindness and consideration.

### 2. Ikaga desu ka.

A politer way of saying **Dō desu ka**, *lit.* “How is it?” This phrase is often used when offering things like food and drink, meaning “Would you like one?” or “How about some?” It can be used in a variety of situations, such as when enquiring about a person’s preferences or circumstances, when asking whether the person is free to do something (Lesson 18), or his state of health (Lesson 22).

### 3. Itadakimasu.

A polite equivalent of **tabemasu**, “I eat,” and **moraimasu**, “I receive.” Said when taking something that is offered, implying both acceptance and gratitude. Japanese mealtime conventions:

Before eating: **Itadakimasu**. “I gratefully partake.”

After eating: **Gochisōsama**. “Thank you for a lovely meal.” (*lit.* “It was indeed a feast!”)

### 4. Iie, mō kekkō desu.

The polite way of refusing something offered. **Kekkō** means “good, fine, splendid.” **Mō** in this case means “already.” The expression **kekkō desu** implies, “I am all right as I am,” or “What I’ve had was fine. It was enough.”

### 5. Donna, “what kind of”

When one wants to know more about things, people or places, one uses **donna** + noun. Answers can be given in various ways.

*ex.* Q: **Donna okashi o tabemashita ka.** “What kind of cakes did (you) eat?”

A1: **Oishii okashi o tabemashita.** “(I) had (some) delicious cakes.”

A2: **Kireina okashi o tabemashita.** “(I) ate (some) pretty cakes.”

A3: **Nihon no okashi o tabemashita.** “(I) ate Japanese cakes.”

A4: **Kukki o tabemashita.** “(I) ate cookies.”

## PRACTICE

### KEY SENTENCES

1. **Kono ringo wa totemo oishii desu.**
2. **Ano ringo wa amari oishikunai desu.**
3. **[Watashi wa] Oishii ringo o tabemashita.**
4. **Kono heya wa shizuka desu.**
5. **Ano heya wa shizuka dewa arimasen.**
6. **[Watashi wa] Shizukana heya de benkyō o shimasu.**

1. This apple is very good.
2. That apple doesn't taste very good.
3. I ate some delicious apples.
4. This room is quiet.
5. That room is not quiet.
6. I study in a quiet room.

### Vocabulary

**amari . . . -nai/-masen** not very . . . (See Appendix J.)  
**shizukana** quiet (-na adj.)

## EXERCISES

I **-i** adjective: Memorize the following **-i** adjectives.

	As Predicate: Present Form		Modifying Noun
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	
big	<b>ōkii desu</b>	<b>ōkikunai desu</b>	<b>ōkii</b>
expensive	<b>takai desu</b>	<b>takakunai desu</b>	<b>takai</b>
good	<b>ii desu</b>	<b>yokunai desu*</b>	<b>ii</b>
new, fresh	<b>atarashii desu</b>	<b>atarashikunai desu</b>	<b>atarashii</b>
small	<b>chiisai desu</b>	<b>chiisakunai desu</b>	<b>chiisai</b>
cheap	<b>yasui desu</b>	<b>yasukunai desu</b>	<b>yasui</b>
bad	<b>warui desu</b>	<b>warukunai desu</b>	<b>warui</b>
old	<b>furui desu**</b>	<b>furukunai desu</b>	<b>furui</b>
interesting	<b>omoshiroi desu</b>	<b>omoshirokunai desu</b>	<b>omoshiroi</b>
difficult	<b>muzukashii desu</b>	<b>muzukashikunai desu</b>	<b>muzukashii</b>
far	<b>tōi desu</b>	<b>tōkunai desu</b>	<b>tōi</b>
good, tasty	<b>oishii desu</b>	<b>oishikunai desu</b>	<b>oishii</b>
busy	<b>isogashii desu</b>	<b>isogashikunai desu</b>	<b>isogashii</b>

boring	tsumaranai desu	tsumaranakunai desu	tsumaranai
easy	yasashii desu	yasashikunai desu	yasashii
near	chikai desu	chikakunai desu	chikai

\*All inflected forms of *ii* come from the *i*-adjective *yoi*, which also means "good."

\*\*Not used for people.

II Practice the following patterns by changing the underlined parts in the examples given.

- A. *ex.* Kono kamera wa ôkii desu.  
Ano kamera wa chiisai desu.  
 1. kono kuruma, ano kuruma  
 2. kono tamago, ano tamago
- B. *ex.* Kono rajio wa takai desu.  
Ano rajio wa yasui desu.  
 1. kono tokei, ano tokei  
 2. gyûniku, toriniku
- C. *ex.* Kore wa atarashii uchi desu.  
Are wa furui uchi desu.  
 1. terebi  
 2. sakana  
 3. yasai

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined part as in the examples given.

- A. *ex.* Q: Nihon-go wa yasashii desu ka.  
 Aa: Hai, yasashii desu.  
 An: Iie, yasashikunai desu.  
 1. muzukashii  
 2. omoshiroi
- B. *ex.* Q: Kono hon wa omoshiroi desu ka.  
 Aa: Hai, omoshiroi desu.  
 An: Iie, amari omoshirokunai desu.  
 1. takai  
 2. ii
- C. *ex.* Q: Kore wa ii hon desu ka.  
 Aa: Hai, totemo ii hon desu.  
 An: Iie, amari ii hon dewa arimasen.  
 1. omoshiroi  
 2. muzukashii
- D. *ex.* Q: Kôen wa koko kara tôi desu ka.  
 A: Iie, tôkunai desu. Chikai desu.  
 1. basu-noriba

2. gakkō
3. chikatetsu no eki

IV **-na** adjective: Memorize the following **-na** adjectives.

	As Predicate: Present Form		Modifying Noun
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	
pretty, clean	<b>kirei desu</b>	<b>kirei dewa arimasen</b>	<b>kireina</b>
quiet	<b>shizuka desu</b>	<b>shizuka dewa arimasen</b>	<b>shizukana</b>
famous	<b>yūmei desu</b>	<b>yūmei dewa arimasen</b>	<b>yūmeina</b>
kind, helpful	<b>shinsetsu desu</b>	<b>shinsetsu dewa arimasen</b>	<b>shinsetsuna</b>
free	<b>hima desu</b>	<b>hima dewa arimasen</b>	<b>himana</b>
lively	<b>nigiyaka desu</b>	<b>nigiyaka dewa arimasen</b>	<b>nigiyakana</b>
convenient	<b>benri desu</b>	<b>benri dewa arimasen</b>	<b>benrina</b>
well, healthy	<b>genki desu</b>	<b>genki dewa arimasen</b>	<b>genkina</b>

V Practice the following patterns by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Kono hana wa kirei desu.

1. Howaito-san
2. ano kissaten

B. *ex.* Kono daidokoro wa benri desu.

1. kono kamera
2. Tokyo no chikatetsu

C. *ex.* Watashi-tachi wa kireina resutoran de shokuji o shimashita.

1. shizukana
2. yūmeina

VI Make dialogues by changing the underlined part as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: Tanaka-san wa genki desu ka.

Aa: Hai, genki desu.

An: Iie, genki dewa arimasen.

1. shinsetsu

B. *ex.* Q: Are wa yūmeina resutoran desu ka.

Aa: Hai, totemo yūmeina resutoran desu.

An: Iie, amari yūmeina resutoran dewa arimasen.

1. kireina
2. shizukana

C. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Ashita hima desu ka.

A: Iie, hima dewa arimasen. Isogashii desu.

1. ashita no gogo
2. raishū no kin-yōbi

D. ex. Q: Tōkyō Hoteru wa donna hoteru desu ka.

A: Atarashii hoteru desu.

1. ōkii
2. shizukana
3. totemo ii

E. ex. Q: Hayashi-san wa donna hito desu ka.

A: Shinsetsuna hito desu.

1. omoshiroi
2. genkina

### Vocabulary

tamago	egg	watashi-tachi	we
takai	expensive (-i adj.)	-tachi	(plural suffix for people)
yasui	cheap (-i adj.)	shokuji o shimasu	have a meal
gyū-niku	beef	(shokuji o suru)	
tori-niku	chicken meat	shokuji	meal
atarashii	new, fresh (-i adj.)	yūmeina	famous (-na adj.)
furui	old, not fresh (-i adj.)	genkina	well, healthy (-na adj.)
yasai	vegetable	shinsetsuna	kind, helpful (-na adj.)
yasashii	easy (-i adj.)	himana	free (-na adj.)
muzukashii	difficult (-i adj.)	isogashii	busy (-i adj.)
omoshiroi	interesting (-i adj.)	Tōkyō Hoteru	Tokyo Hotel
kōen	park	donna	what kind of
benrina	convenient (-na adj.)		

### SHORT DIALOGUES

1. Tanaka: Sumisu-san, o-genki desu ka.  
Sumisu: Ee, arigatō gozaimasu. Genki desu.

Tanaka: How are you, Mr. Smith?

Smith: Fine, thank you.

2. Tanaka: Kyō wa ii tenki desu ne.  
Sumisu: Ee, hontō ni ii tenki desu ne.  
Tanaka: Kyō wa isogashii desu ka.  
Sumisu: Iie, amari isogashikunai desu.

Tanaka: It's a fine day today, isn't it?

Smith: Yes, it really is lovely weather.

Tanaka: (Are you) busy today?

Smith: No, (I'm) not so busy.

3. **Tanaka:** Sumisu-san no uchi wa kaisha kara tōi desu ka.  
**Sumisu:** Iie, tōkunai desu. Chikai desu. Chikatetsu de 20-pun gurai desu.  
**Tanaka:** Sō desu ka. Benri desu ne.

Tanaka: Is your house far from your office?

Smith: No, it isn't. It's near by. It's about 20 minutes by subway.

Tanaka: I see. How convenient.

4. **Howaito:** Koko wa shizukana kōen desu ne.  
**Yamada:** Ee, ōkii ki ya kireina hana ga takusan arimasu ne. Howaito-san wa yoku kōen ni ikimasu ka.  
**Howaito:** Ee, nichiyōbi no asa tokidoki uchi no chikaku no kōen ni ikimasu.

White: This is a quiet park, isn't it?

Yamada: Yes. There are lots of big trees and beautiful flowers (etc.), aren't there? Do you go to parks often?

White: Yes. I sometimes go to the park near my house on Sunday morning.

### Vocabulary

tenki	weather
hontō ni	really, truly
20-pun gurai	about 20 minutes (for about 20 minutes)
gurai	about, approximately
ki	tree

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Sumisu-san wa o-kashi o tabemashita ka.
2. Sumisu-san wa doko no o-kashi o tabemashita ka.
3. Sumisu-san wa nani o nomimashita ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Tanaka-san wa ( ) desu ka.  
Hai, genki desu.
2. Sono hon wa ( ) desu ka.  
Iie, amari omoshirokunai desu.
3. Ano hito wa ( ) desu ka.  
Tanaka-san desu.
4. Ano hito wa ( ) hito desu ka.  
Shinsetsuna hito desu.

III Circle the correct adjective in the parentheses.

1. **Ano kissaten no kōhī wa amari (oishii desu, oishikunai desu).**
2. **Uchi no chikaku ni (kirei, kireina) kōen ga arimasu.**
3. **Kono hon wa (omoshirokunai desu, omoshiroi dewa arimasen).**
4. **Watashi no rajio wa (ikunai desu, yokunai desu, ii dewa arimasen).**
5. **Are wa (yūmei, yūmeina) resutoran desu.**
6. **Yamada-san no uchi wa koko kara totemo (chikai desu, chikakunai desu).**

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. Would you like some coffee?  
Thank you, I'll have some.
2. Would you like another cup of coffee?  
No, thank you. That was enough.
3. We had dinner at a famous restaurant.
4. That cafe is clean, but it isn't quiet.
5. I am busy today.

---

LESSON **14** YESTERDAY'S ENJOYABLE  
KABUKI

---

**Mr. Tanaka is asking Mr. Smith about the Kabuki he saw.**

たなか：かぶきは どうでしたか。

スミス：とても きれいでした。

たなか：にほんごが わかりましたか。

スミス：いいえ、ぜんぜん わかりませんでしたから、イヤホーンで  
えいごの せつめいを ききました。とても おもしろかった  
です。

■ スミスさんは かぶきを みました。イヤホーンで えいごの せつ  
めいを ききました。かぶきは とても おもしろかったです。

**Tanaka: Kabuki wa dō deshita ka.**

**Sumisu: Totemo kirei deshita.**

**Tanaka: Nihon-go ga wakarimashita ka.**

**Sumisu: Iie, zenzen wakarimasendeshita kara, iyahōn de Ei-go no setsumei  
o kikimashita. Totemo omoshirokatta desu.**

■ **Sumisu-san wa kabuki o mimashita. Iyahōn de Ei-go no setsumei o kiki-  
mashita. Kabuki wa totemo omoshirokatta desu.**

Tanaka: How was the Kabuki?

Smith: It was very beautiful.

Tanaka: Did you understand the Japanese?

Smith: No, I didn't understand it at all, so I listened to the English explanation with ear-  
phones. It was fascinating.

■ **Mr. Smith saw a Kabuki play. He listened to the English explanation with earphones. He  
enjoyed the Kabuki very much.**

**Vocabulary**

どうでしたか  
どう

dō deshita ka  
dō

How was it?  
how

わかりました	wakarimashita	understood
わかります (わかる)	wakarimasu (wakaru)	understand
ぜんぜん ~ません	zenzen . . . -masen	(not) at all (See Appendix E.)
イヤホン	iyahōn	earphones
えいご	Ei-go	English language
せつめい	setsumeï	explanation

## NOTES

---

### 1. Dō deshita ka.

Used when asking a person his impression of something.

*ex.* Eiga wa dō deshita ka. "How was the movie?"

Omoshirokatta desu. "It was delightful."

### 2. Nihon-go ga wakarimashita ka.

Note that with the verb **wakarimasu**, the noun usually takes the particle **ga** rather than **o**. (See Grammar X, p. 174.)

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. Kinō wa samukatta desu.
2. Kinō wa atsukunakatta desu.
3. Kinō no pāti wa nigiyaka deshita.
4. [Watashi wa] Senshū hima dewa arimasendeshita.

1. It was cold yesterday.
2. It wasn't hot yesterday.
3. Yesterday's party was lively.
4. I had no free time last week.

### Vocabulary

samukatta	was cold
samui	cold (-i adj.)
atsukunakatta	was not hot
atsui	hot (-i adj.)
nigiyakana	lively (-na adj.)

## EXERCISES

I A. **-i** adjectives: Memorize the following **-i** adjectives and their present and past forms.

	Present Form		Past Form	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
cold	<b>samui desu</b>	<b>samukunai desu</b>	<b>samukatta desu</b>	<b>samukunakatta desu</b>
hot	<b>atsui desu</b>	<b>atsukunai desu</b>	<b>atsukatta desu</b>	<b>atsukunakatta desu</b>
enjoyable	<b>tanoshii desu</b>	<b>tanoshikunai desu</b>	<b>tanoshikatta desu</b>	<b>tanoshikunakatta desu</b>
good	<b>ii desu</b>	<b>yokunai desu</b>	<b>yokatta desu</b>	<b>yokunakatta desu</b>
interesting	<b>omoshiroi desu</b>	<b>omoshirokunai desu</b>	<b>omoshirokatta desu</b>	<b>omoshirokunakatta desu</b>
tasty	<b>oishii desu</b>	<b>oishikunai desu</b>	<b>oishikatta desu</b>	<b>oishikunakatta desu</b>
expensive	<b>takai desu</b>	<b>takakunai desu</b>	<b>takakatta desu</b>	<b>takakunakatta desu</b>

B. **-na** adjectives: Study the following **-na** adjectives.

	Present		Past	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
quiet	<b>shizuka desu</b>	<b>shizuka dewa arimasen</b>	<b>shizuka deshita</b>	<b>shizuka dewa arimasendeshita</b>
well, healthy	<b>genki desu</b>	<b>genki dewa arimasen</b>	<b>genki deshita</b>	<b>genki dewa arimasendeshita</b>

II Practice the following patterns by changing the underlined part as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Kinō no eiga wa omoshirokatta desu.

1. ii
2. tanoshii

B. *ex.* Kinō machi wa shizuka deshita.

1. nigiyaka

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: Kinō no pāti wa tanoshikatta desu ka.

Aa: Hai, tanoshikatta desu.

An: Iie, tanoshikunakatta desu.

1. ryokō
  2. gorufu
- B. *ex.* Q: Tanaka-san wa genki deshita ka.  
 Aa: Hai, totemo genki deshita.  
 Aa: Iie, amari genki dewa arimasendeshita.
1. sensei
  2. Tanaka-san no hisho
- C. *ex.* Q: Kono hon wa yokatta desu ka.  
 Aa: Hai, yokatta desu.  
 Aa: Iie, yokunakatta desu.
1. omoshiroi
  2. muzukashii
- D. *ex.* Q: Kinō no pāti wa dō deshita ka.  
 Aa: Totemo tanoshikatta desu.  
 Aa: Amari tanoshikunakatta desu.
1. omoshiroi
  2. nigiyaka
- E. *ex.* Q: Ryokō wa dō deshita ka.  
 A: Totemo tanoshikatta desu.
1. eiga, omoshiroi
  2. ryōri, oishii

### Vocabulary

<b>tanoshii</b>	enjoyable (-i adj)
<b>machi</b>	town, street
<b>ryokō</b>	trip
<b>gorufu</b>	golf
<b>ryōri</b>	food, cooking

### SHORT DIALOGUE

---

- Tanaka:** Kinō eki no chikaku no resutoran ni ikimashita.  
**Sumisu:** Donna resutoran deshita ka.  
**Tanaka:** Shizukana resutoran deshita.  
**Sumisu:** Ryōri wa dō deshita ka.  
**Tanaka:** Totemo oishikatta desu.  
**Sumisu:** Yokatta desu ne.

- Tanaka: Yesterday I went to the restaurant near the station.  
 Smith: What was the restaurant like?  
 Tanaka: It was a quiet restaurant.

Smith: How was the food?  
Tanaka: It was very good.  
Smith: It turned out well (then), didn't it?

## QUIZ ■■■■■

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Sumisu-san wa nani o mimashita ka.
2. Kabuki wa omoshirokatta desu ka, omoshirokunakatta desu ka.
3. Sumisu-san wa nan de Ei-go no setsumei o kikimashita ka.

II Give the antonyms of the following.

- |               |            |               |        |
|---------------|------------|---------------|--------|
| 1. muzukashii | 4. chiisai | 7. samui      | 10. ii |
| 2. tōi        | 5. yasui   | 8. nigiyakana |        |
| 3. omoshiroi  | 6. himana  | 9. atarashii  |        |

III Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Shūmatsu ni ( ) o shimashita ka.  
Kyōto ni ikimashita.  
Kyōto wa ( ) deshita ka.  
Totemo kirei deshita.  
Tenki wa ( ) desu ka.  
Ee, totemo yokatta desu.
2. ( ) hiru-gohan o tabemasen ka.  
Isogashii desu kara.
3. Ano hito wa ( ) hito desu ka.  
Omoshiroi hito desu.

IV Circle the correct words in the parentheses.

1. Kinō no tenki wa totemo (yokatta desu, ii deshita, ikatta desu).
2. Ryokō wa (nan, dō) deshita ka.  
Tanoshikatta desu.
3. Do-yōbi no pāti wa (nigiyakatta desu, nigiyaka deshita).
4. Ano resutoran wa amari (kirekunai desu, kirei desu, kirei dewa arimasen).
5. Kinō eiga o mimashita ga, zenzen (omoshirokatta desu, omoshirokunai deshita, omoshirokunakatta desu).
6. Tanaka-san wa senshū (genkikatta desu, genki deshita).

V Translate into Japanese.

1. How was yesterday's meeting?
2. Yesterday's weather was good.
3. That restaurant's food was not very good.

---

# LESSON 15 GIVING AND RECEIVING

---

**Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Smith are talking about a vase Mr. Tanaka received from Mr. Clark.**

スミス：きれいな かびんですね。

たなか：ええ、たんじょうびに ともだちの クラークさんに  
もらいました。

スミス：いい いろですね。

たなか：ええ、わたしの すきな いろです。

■ たなかさんは クラークさんに かびんを もらいました。クラークさんは たなかさんに かびんを あげました。

**Sumisu: Kireina kabin desu ne.**

**Tanaka: Ee, tanjōbi ni tomodachi no Kurāku-san ni moraimashita.**

**Sumisu: Ii iro desu ne.**

**Tanaka: Ee, watashi no sukina iro desu.**

■ **Tanaka-san wa Kurāku-san ni kabin o moraimashita. Kurāku-san wa Tanaka-san ni kabin o agemashita.**

Smith: What a lovely vase!

Tanaka: Yes. My friend Mr. Clark gave it to me on my birthday.

Smith: It's a nice color, isn't it?

Tanaka: Yes, it's a favorite color of mine.

■ Mr. Tanaka received a vase from Mr. Clark. Mr. Clark gave Mr. Tanaka a vase.

## Vocabulary

かびん	kabin	vase
に	ni	from (particle)
もらいました	moraimashita	received
もらいます (もらう)	moraimasu (morau)	receive
いろ	iro	color

すき (な)	sukina	likable, favorite (-na adj.)
に	ni	to (particle)
あげました	agemashita	gave
あげます (あげる)	agemasu (ageru)	give

## GRAMMAR VI

---

### Lesson 15 Giving and Receiving

... NI ... O verb

1. person WA person NI noun O AGEMASU
2. person WA person NI noun O MORAIMASU

• **Agemasu/Kuremasu, "give"**  
**Moraimasu, "receive"**

There are two words in Japanese meaning "give," and great care must be taken in their correct use. **Agemasu**, *lit.* "to raise up," implies "to humbly present," and can never be used when speaking of something that someone gives *you*. **Kuremasu**, on the other hand, literally means "to hand down" and must *only* be used in connection with things given to you.

*ex.* **Watashi wa Tanaka-san ni kabin o agemashita.** "I gave Mr. Tanaka a vase."

**Kurāku-san wa watashi ni kabin o kuremashita.** "Mr. Clark gave me a vase."

**Watashi wa Kurāku-san ni kabin o moraimashita.** "I received a vase from Mr. Clark."

Note: **Kuremasu** is not used in this book since **moraimasu**, "receive," is more frequently used. Also, **kara** is often used with **moraimasu** instead of **ni**.

**Agemasu** may also be freely used when the speaker is not involved in the giving.

*ex.* **Kurāku-san wa Tanaka-san ni kabin o agemashita.** "Mr. Clark gave Mr. Tanaka a vase."

## NOTE

---

1. **Tomodachi no Kurāku-san**

This is not the possessive **no**. It is the appositive, "my friend, Mr. Clark."

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Hayashi-san wa Sumisu-san ni hon o agemashita.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa Hayashi-san ni hon o moraimashita.**

1. Mr. Hayashi gave Mr. Smith a book.
2. Mr. Smith received a book from Mr. Hayashi.

## EXERCISES

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their present and past forms.

	Present Form		Past Form	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
give	agemasu	agemasen	agemashita	agemasendeshita
receive	moraimasu	moraimasen	moraimashita	moraimasendeshita

II Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined parts as in the example given.

ex. Hayashi-san wa Sumisu-san ni hon o agemasu. Sumisu-san wa Hayashi-san ni hon o moraimasu.

1. Sumisu-san, Sumisu-san no hisho
2. Nihon-go no sensei, Kurāku-san

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined part as in the examples given.

A. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Kurāku-san ni hon o agemashita ka.

Aa: Hai, agemashita.

An: Iie, agemasendeshita.

1. kireina kitte
2. atarashii jisho
3. <sup>trip</sup>ryokō no <sup>photo</sup>shashin

B. ex. Q: Dare ga Kurāku-san ni atarashii jisho o agemasu ka.

A: Tanaka-san ga agemasu.

1. Haruko-san
2. kaisha no hito

C. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Dare ni eiga no kippu o moraimashita ka.

A: Tomodachi ni moraimashita.

1. chichi
2. ane

D. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Otōsan no tanjōbi ni otōsan ni nani o agemasu ka.

A: Nekutai o agemasu.

1. tokei
2. <sup>history</sup>rekishi no hon

### Vocabulary

jisho dictionary

Haruko a given name (female)

chichi (my) father

ane (my) elder sister

nekutai necktie

rekishi history

## SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. Hayashi: *Ii nekutai desu ne.*

Kurāku: *Dōmo arigatō. Kinō kanai ni moraimashita. Kinō wa watashi no tanjōbi deshita.*

Hayashi: *What a nice necktie.*

Clark: *Thank you. I received it from my wife yesterday. Yesterday was my birthday.*

2. Sumisu: *Watashi wa Amerika de Nihon-go no benkyō o shimashita.*

Tanaka: *Hiragana ya kanji no benkyō mo shimashita ka.*

Sumisu: *Hai, shimashita. Kanji wa totemo omoshiroi desu. Watashi wa yoku Nihon-go no hon o yomimasu. Nihon-go no sensei ni kono hon o moraimashita. Totemo omoshiroi hon desu.*

Smith: *I studied Japanese in America.*

Tanaka: *Did you study *hiragana*, *kanji* (and so on), too?*

Smith: *Yes, I did. Kanji is fascinating. I often read books in Japanese. I was given this book by my Japanese teacher. It's a very entertaining book.*

### Vocabulary

**kanai** (my) wife

**hiragana** *hiragana* (Japanese script)

**kanji** *kanji* (Chinese characters)

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. **Tanaka-san wa itsu kireina kabin o moraimashita ka.**
2. **Tanaka-san wa dare ni kireina kabin o moraimashita ka.**
3. **Dare ga Tanaka-san ni kireina kabin o agemashita ka.**
4. **Kurāku-san wa dare ni kireina kabin o agemashita ka.**

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. **Tanaka-san wa ( ) ni ryokō no shashin o agemashita ka.**  
**Kurāku-san ni agemashita.**
2. **Hayashi-san wa ( ) ni eiga no kippu o moraimashita ka.**  
**Sumisu-san ni moraimashita.**
3. **Tomodachi ni ( ) o agemashita ka.**  
**Nihon-go no jisho o agemashita.**

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. **Watashi wa kono kabin o kaimasen deshita. Tomodachi (       ) moraimashita.**
2. **Dare (       ) Hayashi-san ni eiga no kippu (       ) agemashita ka.**
3. **Sumisu-san wa tomodachi (       ) Amerika no kireina kitte (       ) agemashita.**
4. **Tanjōbi (       ) nani (       ) moraimashita ka.  
Nani (       ) moraimasen deshita.**

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. Mr. Tanaka received a pretty vase from Mr. Clark.
2. Mr. Hayashi gave Mr. Smith a map of Kyoto.
3. Did you give that person a business card?  
Yes, I did (give him one).

---

# LESSON 16 ASKING PREFERENCES

---

## Mr. Hayashi invites Mr. Smith to go skiing.

はやし：どようびに にっこうに スキーに いきます。スミスさん、  
いっしょに いきませんか。

スミス：いいですね。いきましよう。なんで いきますか。

はやし：でんしゃで いきます。とうきょうえきで あいませんか。

スミス：はい。なんじに あいましようか。

はやし：あさの 7じに とうきょうえきの かいさつぐちで  
あいましよう。

スミス：はい、わかりました。じゃ、どようびに。

■はやしさんは スミスさんと にっこうに スキーに いきます。  
どようびの あさ 7じに とうきょうえきの かいさつぐちで  
スミスさんに あいます。

**Hayashi:** Do-yōbi ni Nikkō ni suki ni ikimasu. Sumisu-san, issho ni ikimasen ka.

**Sumisu:** Ii desu ne. Ikimashō. Nan de ikimasu ka.

**Hayashi:** Densha de ikimasu. Tōkyō Eki de aimasen ka.

**Sumisu:** Hai. Nan-ji ni aimashō ka.

**Hayashi:** Asa no 7-ji ni Tōkyō Eki no kaisatsuguchi de aimashō.

**Sumisu:** Hai, wakarimashita. Ja, do-yōbi ni.

■ Hayashi-san wa Sumisu-san to Nikkō ni suki ni ikimasu. Do-yōbi no asa 7-ji ni Tōkyō Eki no kaisatsuguchi de Sumisu-san ni aimasu.

**Hayashi:** I'm going to Nikko on Saturday to ski. Mr. Smith, wouldn't you like to go with me?

**Smith:** How nice! I'd love to go. (*lit.* "Let's go.") How do we get there?

**Hayashi:** We'll go by train. Shall we meet at Tokyo Station?

**Smith:** All right. What time shall we meet?

**Hayashi:** Let's meet by the ticket gate in Tokyo Station at 7:00 in the morning.

**Smith:** Sure. That's fine. Well, see you Saturday!

- Mr. Hayashi is going skiing in Nikko with Mr. Smith. He is meeting Mr. Smith at 7:00 on Saturday morning by the ticket gate at Tokyo Station.

### Vocabulary

にっこう	Nikkō	Nikko (city name)
スキー	suki	skiing
に	ni	to (particle)
いっしょに	issho ni	together with
あいましょうか	aimashō ka	Shall we meet . . .
わかりました	wakarimashita	sure, certainly

## GRAMMAR VII

### Lessons 16–17 Inviting and Offering to Do Something

1. verb -MASHŌ
2. verb -MASHŌ KA
3. verb -MASEN KA

#### ● Inviting and Suggesting

verb -**mashō**

*ex.* **12-ji ni eki no mae de aimashō.** “Let’s meet at 12:00 in front of the station.”

Verb -**mashō** is generally translatable as “let’s,” “we’ll,” “I’ll.”

verb -**mashō ka**

*ex.* **Nan-ji ni aimashō ka.** “What time shall we meet?”

Verb -**mashō ka** is used when you are inviting someone to decide a time, place, etc., for something.

verb -**masen ka**

*ex.* **Issho ni Nikkō ni ikimasen ka.** “Won’t you go to Nikko with me?”

**Nichi-yōbi ni uchi ni kimasen ka.** “Won’t you come to my house on Sunday?”

Verb -**masen ka** is used to invite someone to do something. Appropriate replies are as follows.

Acceptance: 1. **Ee/Hai, verb -mashō.** “Yes, let’s.”

2. **Ee/Hai, arigatō gozaimasu.** “Yes, thank you.”

3. **Ee/Hai, zehi.** “Yes, I’d love to.”

Refusal: 1. **Zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu.** “I’m sorry, I’m afraid it’s not convenient.” (*lit.* “Unfortunately the circumstances are unfavorable.”)

2. **Arigatō gozaimasu. Demo (mō yomimashita).** “Thank you. But (I’ve already read it).” (State your reason after **demo**.)

3. **Iie, kekkō desu.** “No, thank you.” (See Note 4, p. 96)

#### ● Offering to do something

verb -**mashō ka**

ex. **Chizu o kakimashō ka.** "Shall I draw you a map?"

Verb **-mashō ka** is used when offering to do something for someone.

Appropriate replies are as follows.

Acceptance: **Hai, onegaishimasu.** "Yes, please."

Refusal: **Iie, kekkō desu.** "No, thank you."

## NOTES

---

### 1. **Sukī ni ikimasu.**

**Sukī**, "skiing," is a purpose, not a place. Therefore it takes the particle **ni**, not **e**.

### 2. **Sumisu-san, issho ni ikimasen ka.**

**Sumisu-san** is simply being addressed by name and hence is not the topic of the sentence. In this case, the name, or title, usually comes at the beginning of the Japanese sentence.

ex. **Tanaka-san, dōzo kochira ni.** "This way, please, Mr. Tanaka."

### 3. **Ja, do-yōbi ni.**

**Do-yōbi ni** is short for **Do-yōbi ni aimashō**, "Let's meet on Saturday." Japanese often refer to the next meeting rather than saying "Goodbye."

ex. **Ja, mata ashita.** "Well then, (see you) again tomorrow."

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Do-yōbi ni issho ni tennis o shimasen ka.**

2. **Issho ni shokuji ni ikimasen ka.**

3. **12-ji ni eki no mae de aimashō.**

1. Won't you play tennis with me on Saturday?

2. Won't you go out for a meal with me?

3. Let's meet at 12:00 in front of the station.

## EXERCISES

---

I Verbs: Memorize the following **-mashō**, **-mashō ka**, and **-masen ka** forms.

	go	see	do	meet
<b>V-masu</b>	<b>ikimasu</b>	<b>mimasu</b>	<b>shimasu</b>	<b>aimasu</b>
<b>V-mashō</b>	<b>ikimashō</b>	<b>mimashō</b>	<b>shimashō</b>	<b>aimashō</b>
<b>V-mashō ka</b>	<b>ikimashō ka</b>	<b>mimashō ka</b>	<b>shimashō ka</b>	<b>aimashō ka</b>
<b>V-masen ka</b>	<b>ikimasen ka</b>	<b>mimasen ka</b>	<b>shimasen ka</b>	<b>aimasen ka</b>

II Practice the following patterns:

ex. eiga ni ikimasu → Eiga ni ikimashō.  
Eiga ni ikimashō ka.  
Eiga ni ikimasen ka.

1. shokuji o shimasu
2. kōhi o nomimasu

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. ex A: B-san, ashita issho ni shokuji ni ikimasen ka.

Ba: Ee, ikimashō.

Bn: Zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu.

1. kaimono
2. haikingu
3. doraibu

B. ex A: B-san, issho ni eiga o mimasen ka.

B: Ee, mimashō.

1. sampo o shimasu
2. takushi de kaerimasu
3. ano resutoran de hiru-gohan o tabemasu

C. ex A: Nan de kaerimashō ka.

B: Takushi de kaerimasen ka.

A: Ee, sō shimashō.

1. chikatetsu
2. basu

D. ex A: Nan-ji ni aimashō ka.

B: 12-ji goro wa dō desu ka.

A: Ee, ii desu.

1. 3-ji
2. 5-ji han

E. ex A: Doko ni doraibu ni ikimashō ka.

B: Umi no chikaku ni ikimasen ka.

A: Ee, ikimashō.

1. kaimono, Ginza
2. suki, Nikkō

F. ex A: Nani o shimashō ka

B: Tenisu o shimashō.

1. sampo ni ikimasu
2. eiga o mimasu

## Vocabulary

<b>zannen desu ga</b>	I'm sorry, but . . .	<b>doraibu</b>	driving/a drive
<b>zannenna</b>	regrettable (-na adj.)	<b>sampo o shimasu</b>	take a walk
<b>tsugō ga warui</b>	(I) am unable ( <i>lit.</i> "Con- ditions are bad.")	<b>(sampo o suru)</b>	
<b>desu</b>		<b>sampo</b>	a walk
<b>tsugō</b>	condition	<b>umi</b>	sea
<b>haikingu</b>	hiking		

## SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. **Sumisu:** Hayashi-san, sampo ni ikimasen ka.  
**Hayashi:** Ee, ikimashō.  
**Sumisu:** Kono chikaku ni ōkii kōen ga arimasu. Kōen ni ikimashō.

**Smith:** Mr. Hayashi, wouldn't you like to go for a walk?  
**Hayashi:** Yes, let's go.  
**Smith:** There is a big park near here. Let's go to the park.

2. Discussing what to give the Tanakas for their new baby.  
**Yamada:** Tanaka-san no akachan ni nani o agemashō ka.  
**Howaito:** Supūn to koppu wa dō desu ka.  
**Yamada:** Ii desu ne. Ashita depāto de kaimasen ka.  
**Howaito:** Ee, sō shimashō.

**Yamada:** What shall we give the Tanakas for their (new) baby?  
**White:** How about a spoon and a mug?  
**Yamada:** All right. Shall we buy them tomorrow at the department store?  
**White:** Yes, let's do that.

## Vocabulary

<b>akachan</b>	baby (other than speaker's own)
<b>supūn</b>	spoon
<b>koppu</b>	mug

## QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Hayashi-san wa doko ni suki ni ikimasu ka.
2. Hayashi-san wa hitori de suki ni ikimasu ka.
3. Hayashi-san wa Sumisu-san ni doko de aimasu ka.
4. Hayashi-san wa Sumisu-san ni 7-ji ni aimasu ka, 8-ji ni aimasu ka.
5. Hayashi-san to Sumisu-san wa nan de ikimasu ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. **Do-yōbi ni eiga ni ikimasen ka.**  
**Ee, ikimashō. (       ) de aimashō ka.**  
**Tōkyō Eki no kaisatsuguchi de aimashō.**  
**(       ) ni aimashō ka.**  
**4-ji ni aimasen ka.**  
**Ee, ii desu. 4-ji ni aimashō.**
2. **Kinō tenisu ni ikimashita.**  
**Sō desu ka. (       ) to shimashita ka.**  
**Sumisu-san to shimashita.**

III Put the appropriate particle in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. **Issho (       ) tenisu (       ) shimasen ka.**
2. **Issho (       ) tenisu (       ) ikimasen ka.**
3. **Raishū no do-yōbi (       ) doraibu (       ) ikimasen ka.**
4. **Shokuji (       ) ikimasen ka.**  
**Ee. Doko (       ) tabemashō ka.**

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. I went shopping at a department store on Saturday.
2. Won't you have a meal with me?  
Yes, let's (do that). Where shall we go?  
Wouldn't you like to go to the new restaurant near the station?  
Yes, let's do that.

---

# LESSON 17 INVITATION TO A PARTY

---

**Mr. Tanaka invites Mr. Smith to a farewell party for Mr. Clark.**

たなか：どようびの ばん うちで クラークさんの そうべつかいを  
します。スミスさん、きませんか。

スミス：ええ、ぜひ。ありがとうございます。おたくは どちらですか。

たなか：あざぶです。ちずを かきましようか。

スミス：ええ、おねがいします。

■スミスさんは どようびの ばん クラークさんの そうべつかいに  
いきます。

**Tanaka: Do-yōbi no ban uchi de Kurāku-san no sōbetsukai o shimasu.  
Sumisu-san, kimasen ka.**

**Sumisu: Ee, zehi. Arigatō gozaimasu. O-taku wa dochira desu ka.**

**Tanaka: Azabu desu. Chizu o kakimashō ka.**

**Sumisu: Ee, onegaishimasu.**

■Sumisu-san wa do-yōbi no ban Kurāku-san no sōbetsukai ni ikimasu.

Tanaka: I'm giving a farewell party for Mr. Clark at my house on Saturday evening.  
Won't you come, Mr. Smith?

Smith: Yes, I'd like to. Thank you very much. Where is your house?

Tanaka: It's in Azabu. Shall I draw you a map?

Smith: Yes, please.

■Mr. Smith is going to a farewell party for Mr. Clark on Saturday evening.

## Vocabulary

そうべつかい  
ぜひ  
どちら  
あざぶ  
かきましようか

sōbetsukai      farewell party  
zehi              I'd like to. (*lit.* "by all means")  
dochira          where (polite word for **doko**)  
Azabu            Azabu (place name)  
kakimashō ka    Shall (I) draw . . .

## NOTES

---

### 1. Sōbetsukai o shimasu.

Since Mr. Tanaka is the host, he says **Sōbetsukai o shimasu**, "I'm giving a farewell party," rather than **sōbetsukai ga arimasu**, "There will be a farewell party." (See Grammar VIII, p. 124.)

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

#### 1. Nichi-yōbi ni uchi ni kimasen ka.

#### 2. Mado o akemashō ka.

1. Won't you come to my house on Sunday?

2. Shall I open the window?

### Vocabulary

**akemashō ka**            Shall I open . . . ?

**akemasu (akeru)**    open

## EXERCISES

---

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their **-mashō** forms.

	open	close	turn on	turn off	make a copy
<b>V-masu</b>	<b>akemasu</b>	<b>shimemasu</b>	<b>tsukemasu</b>	<b>keshimasu</b>	<b>kopi o shimasu</b>
<b>V-mashō</b>	<b>akemashō</b>	<b>shimemashō</b>	<b>tsukemashō</b>	<b>keshimashō</b>	<b>kopi o shi-mashō</b>
<b>V-mashō ka</b>	<b>akema-shō ka</b>	<b>shimema-shō ka</b>	<b>tsukema-shō ka</b>	<b>keshima-shō ka</b>	<b>kopi o shi-mashō ka</b>

II Practice the following patterns.

ex. **mado o akemasu** → **Mado o akemashō.**  
**Mado o akemashō ka.**

1. **rajio o keshimasu**

2. **doa o shimemasu**

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. ex. A: **Do-yōbi ni uchi de Kurāku-san no sōbetsukai o shimasu.** Uchi ni **kimasen ka.**

**Ba:** Ee, zehi.

**Bn:** Zannen desu ga, tsugō ga warui desu.

1. pāti
2. Kurāku-san no kangeikai

B. ex. A: Kono hon wa omoshiroi desu yo. Yomimasen ka.

**Ba:** Ee, arigatō gozaimasu.

**Bn:** Arigato gozaimasu. Demo mō yomimashita.

1. zasshi, yomimasu
2. bideo, mimasu

C. ex. A: Atsui desu ne. Mado o akemashō ka.

**Ba:** Ee, onegaishimasu.

**Bn:** Iie, kekkō desu.

1. kurai, denki o tsukemasu
2. urusai, doa o shimemasu
3. atsui, hitā o keshimasu

### Vocabulary

keshimasu (kesu)	turn off	kurai	dark (-i adj.)
doa	door	denki	(electric) light
shimemasu (shimeru)	close	tsukemasu (tsukeru)	turn on
kangeikai	welcome party	urusai	noisy (-i adj.)
demo	but	hitā	heater
bideo	video		

### SHORT DIALOGUE

---

**Yamada:** Kopī o shimashō ka.

**Sumisu:** Hai, onegaishimasu.

**Yamada:** Nan-mai shimashō ka.

**Sumisu:** 3-mai onegaishimasu.

**Yamada:** Shall I make a copy?

**Smith:** Yes, please.

**Yamada:** How many copies shall I make?

**Smith:** Three copies, please.

### Vocabulary

kopī photocopy

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Kurāku-san no sōbetsukai wa itsu desu ka.
2. Sumisu-san wa Kurāku-san no sōbetsukai ni ikimasu ka, ikimasen ka.

3. **Tanaka-san wa doko de Kuraku-san no sōbetsukai o shimasu ka.**
4. **Tanaka-san no uchi wa doko ni arimasu ka.**
5. **Tanaka-san wa Sumisu-san ni chizu o kakimasu ka.**

II Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. **Raishū no do-yōbi (       ) okusan to issho (       ) uchi (       ) kimasen ka.**

**Ee, zehi.**

**Issho (       ) ban-gohan (       ) tabemashō.**

2. **Tenisu (       ) ikimasen ka. Ii tenki desu kara.**

**Zannen desu (       ), tsugō (       ) warui desu.**

3. **Atsui desu ne. Mado (       ) akemashō ka.**

**Hai, onegaishimasu.**

III Translate into Japanese.

1. Won't you come to my house on Sunday?
2. We're having a farewell party for Mr. Clark at our house on Friday. Won't you come?  
Yes, I'd like to.
3. Won't you have a meal with me?
4. It's cold, isn't it? Shall I close the window?  
Yes, please.
5. Shall I draw you a map?

---

# LESSON 18 OWNERSHIP AND EVENTS

---

**Mr. Hayashi and Mr. Smith are making a date to go to the movies.**

はやし：えいがの きっぷが 2まい あります。こんばん いっしょに いきませんか。

スミス：ごんねんですが、こんばん 7じに たいしかんに いきます。たいしかんで パーティーが ありますから。

はやし：そうですか。あしたは どうですか。

スミス：あしたは じかんが あります。

はやし：じゃ、あした いきませんか。

スミス：ええ、あした おねがいします。

■スミスさんは こんばん たいしかんで パーティーが ありますから、あした はやしさんと えいがに いきます。

**Hayashi: Eiga no kippu ga 2-mai arimasu. Komban issyo ni ikimasen ka.**

**Sumisu: Zannen desu ga, komban 7-ji ni taishikan ni ikimasu. Taishikan de pāti ga arimasu kara.**

**Hayashi: Sō desu ka. Ashita wa dō desu ka.**

**Sumisu: Ashita wa jikan ga arimasu.**

**Hayashi: Ja, ashita ikimasen ka.**

**Sumisu: Ee, ashita onegaishimasu.**

■Sumisu-san wa komban taishikan de pāti ga arimasu kara, ashita Hayashi-san to eiga ni ikimasu.

Hayashi: I have two tickets for the movie. Wouldn't you like to go with me tonight?

Smith: I'm sorry, but I'm going to the embassy tonight at 7:00. There's a party at the embassy.

Hayashi: I see. What about tomorrow?

Smith: I'm free tomorrow.

Hayashi: Well then, would you like to go tomorrow?

Smith: Yes, let's make it tomorrow.

- There is a party at the embassy tonight, so Mr. Smith is going to the movie with Mr. Hayashi tomorrow.

### Vocabulary

あります (ある)	<b>arimasu (aru)</b>	have
じかん	<b>jikan</b>	time

## GRAMMAR VIII

---

### Lesson 18 Ownership and Events

1. person **WA** noun **GA ARIMASU**
2. place **DE** event **GA ARIMASU**

- Grammar III covers the main uses of the verb **arimasu**. The following are additional uses.

1. To have, to own

*ex.* **Kuruma ga arimasu kara issho ni ikimashō.** "I have a car, so let's go together."

*ex.* **Tanaka-san wa kodomo ga futari arimasu.** "Mr. Tanaka has two children."

2. To take place, to happen

*ex.* **Koko de 2-ji kara kaigi ga arimasu.** "There will be a meeting here from 2 o'clock."

Note: Remember that in the case of "giving a party" or "holding a meeting," etc., the verb **shimasu** is used. (See Note 1, p. 120.)

Note also, **koko de**. When **arimasu** means "take place" or "occur," the particle used with the place is **de**, rather than **ni**.

## NOTE

---

1. **Ashita wa dō desu ka.**

The questioner is asking about his friend's arrangements for tomorrow. **Ashita** ("tomorrow"), though not the grammatical subject, is the topic in question, so it takes the topic marker **wa**.

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. [Watashi wa] Kyō jikan ga arimasu.
2. [Watashi wa] Eiga no kippu ga 2-mai arimasu.
3. Sumisu-san wa kodomo ga futari arimasu.
4. Do-yōbi ni taishikan de pāti ga arimasu.

1. I have time today.
2. I have two tickets for the movie.
3. Mr. Smith has two children.
4. On Saturday there will be a party at the embassy.

### EXERCISES

---

I Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

ex. [Watashi wa] Jikan ga arimasu.

1. kaigi
2. eiga no kippu
3. kodomo
4. kyōdai

II Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Ima jikan ga arimasu ka.

Aa: Hai, arimasu.

Aa: Iie, arimasen.

1. ima, o-kane
2. ashita, kaigi
3. kongetsu, yasumi

B. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Eiga no kippu ga arimasu ka.

A: Hai, arimasu.

1. kuruma
2. kyōdai

C. ex. Q: Hayashi-san wa kyō kaigi ga arimasu ka.

Aa: Hai, arimasu. 3-ji kara kaisha de arimasu.

Aa: Iie, arimasen. Ashita arimasu.

1. Nihon-go no jugyō
2. pāti

D. ex. Q: [Anata wa] Itsu yasumi ga arimasu ka.

A: Raigetsu arimasu.

1. Nihon-go no jugyō, getsu-yōbi to ka-yōbi ni

2. kaigi, 9-ji kara 5-ji made

E. ex. A: Do-yōbi ni pāti ga arimasu.

B: Pāti wa doko de arimasu ka.

A: Taishikan de arimasu.

1. kaigi, kaisha

2. tomodachi no kekkon-shiki, hoteru

F. ex. Q: Sumisu-san wa kyōdai ga nan-nin arimasu ka.

A: 3-nin arimasu.

1. kodomo, futari

2. imōto-san, hitori

### Vocabulary

kyōdai	brothers and/or sisters	kekkon-shiki	wedding
o-kane	money	kekkon	marriage
kongetsu	this month	shiki	ceremony
yasumi	vacation, day off	imōto-san	(your) younger sister
jugyō	class		

### SHORT DIALOGUES

1. Yamada: Hayashi-san, ima jikan ga arimasu ka.

Hayashi: Iie, ima chotto isogashii desu. Ima kara kaigi ga arimasu kara.

Yamada: Mr. Hayashi, do you have time, now?

Hayashi: No, I'm afraid I'm busy now. There's a conference (starting) now.

2. Yamada: Kurāku-san no <sup>farewell party</sup> sōbetsukai wa doko de arimasu ka.

Howaito: Hayashi-san no uchi de arimasu.

Yamada: Itsu arimasu ka.

Howaito: Kin-yōbi no gogo 7-ji kara desu.

Yamada: Where is the farewell party for Mr. Clark being held?

White: It's being held at Mr. Hayashi's house.

Yamada: When is it?

White: On Friday evening, from 7 o'clock.

3. Tanaka: Sumisu-san, <sup>children (Bishō - vs. 2 wa kodomo)</sup> okosan ga arimasu ka.

Sumisu: Ee, futari arimasu. Musuko to musume desu.

Tanaka: Musuko-san wa nan-sai desu ka.

Sumisu: Musuko wa 15-sai desu.

Tanaka: Ojō-san wa?

Sumisu: 13-sai desu.

Tanaka: Mr. Smith, do you have any children?

Smith: Yes, I have two. A son and a daughter.

Tanaka: How old is your son?  
 Smith: My son is 15.  
 Tanaka: (And) Your daughter?  
 Smith: (She's) Thirteen.

### Vocabulary

<b>chotto</b>	a little	<b>nan-sai</b>	how many years old
<b>okosan</b>	(your) child	<b>-sai</b>	years old (used only for people and pets)
<b>musuko</b>	(my) son	<b>ojō-san</b>	(your) daughter
<b>musume</b>	(my) daughter		
<b>musuko-san</b>	(your) son		

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Hayashi-san wa nan no kippu ga arimasu ka.
2. Hayashi-san wa kippu ga nan-mai arimasu ka.
3. Sumisu-san wa komban eiga ni ikimasu ka, pāti ni ikimasu ka.
4. Komban taishikan de nani ga arimasu ka.
5. Hayashi-san wa komban hitori de eiga ni ikimasu ka.
6. Hayashi-san wa itsu, dare to eiga ni ikimasu ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Hayashi-san wa kyōdai ga ( ) arimasu ka.  
3-nin arimasu.
2. Anata wa ( ) yasumi ga arimasu ka.  
Raigetsu arimasu.
3. Kyō taishikan de ( ) ga arimasu ka.  
Pāti ga arimasu.
4. Tomodachi no kekkon-shiki wa ( ) de arimasu ka.  
Hoteru de arimasu.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Tanaka-san wa kuruma ( ) arimasu.
2. Tanaka-san no kuruma wa asoko ( ) arimasu.
3. Kyō kaigi wa doko ( ) arimasu ka.
4. Sumisu-san wa kodomo ( ) futari ( ) arimasu.
5. Nichi-yōbi ni tomodachi no uchi ( ) pāti ( ) arimasu.

6. Eiga (       ) kippu (       ) 2-mai (       ) arimasu.  
Ashita (       ) issho ni ikimasen ka.  
Tsugō ga warui desu. Shigoto (       ) takusan arimasu kara.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. I have three younger sisters. My sisters are in Tokyo and Osaka.
2. Mr. Tanaka, will you have a vacation in August?  
No, I won't. I'll have (one) in September.
3. There is a meeting at (our) Kyoto branch office next week.

# LESSON 19 DOING THIS AND THAT

**Mrs. Smith is telling Mr. Hayashi about her friend Linda who has just arrived in Japan.**

スミス：きのう アメリカから ともだちの リンダさんが きました。

はやし：リンダさんは いつまで にほんに いますか。

スミス：こんしゅうの きんようびまで どうきょうに います。どうきょうに みっかだけ います。それから わたしと いっしょに りょこうを します。

はやし：どこに いきますか。

スミス：きょうとと ならに 行って、ふるい おてらや にわをみます。そして リンダさんは らいしゅうの もくようびに アメリカに かえります。

■ スミスさんの ともだちの リンダさんは きのう アメリカから きました。らいしゅうの もくようびまで にほんに います。

**Sumisu: Kinō Amerika kara tomodachi no Rinda-san ga kimashita.**

**Hayashi: Rinda-san wa itsu made Nihon ni imasu ka.**

**Sumisu: Konshū no kin-yōbi made Tōkyō ni imasu. Tōkyō ni mikka dake imasu. Sorekara watashi to issho ni ryokō o shimasu.**

**Hayashi: Doko ni ikimasu ka.**

**Sumisu: Kyōto to Nara ni itte, furui o-tera ya niwa o mimasu. Soshite Rinda-san wa raishū no moku-yōbi ni Amerika ni kaerimasu.**

■ **Sumisu-san no tomodachi no Rinda-san wa kinō Amerika kara kimashita. Raishū no moku-yōbi made Nihon ni imasu.**

Smith: My friend Linda came from America yesterday.

Hayashi: How long (*lit.* "until when") is Linda staying in Japan?

Smith: She'll be in Tokyo until this Friday. She'll only be in Tokyo three days. Then she's taking a trip with me.

Hayashi: Where are you going?

Smith: We'll go to Kyoto and Nara and see (things like) old temples and gardens. Then Linda returns to America on Thursday of next week.

- Mrs. Smith's friend Linda arrived yesterday from America. She is staying in Japan until Thursday of next week.

### Vocabulary

リンダ	<b>Rinda</b>	Linda
います (いる)	<b>imasu (iru)</b>	stay
こんしゅう	<b>konshū</b>	this week
みっか	<b>mikka</b>	(for) 3 days
だけ	<b>dake</b>	only
それから	<b>sorekara</b>	after that
なら	<b>Nara</b>	Nara (city and prefecture)
おてら	<b>o-tera</b>	temple

## GRAMMAR IX

### Lessons 19–27 -TE Form, -NAI Form, and Model Verb Conjugation

- All the verbs presented so far have been in, or derived from, the **-masu** form. Here are two other important verb forms, the **-te** form and the **-nai** form.

#### 1. -te Form

Regular I					
buy	<b>kai-masu</b>	<b>katte</b>	go	<b>iki-masu</b>	<b>itte*</b>
return	<b>kaeri-masu</b>	<b>kaette</b>	read	<b>yomi-masu</b>	<b>yonde</b>
wait	<b>machi-masu</b>	<b>matte</b>	call	<b>yobi-masu</b>	<b>yonde</b>
write	<b>kaki-masu</b>	<b>kaite</b>	push	<b>oshi-masu</b>	<b>oshite</b>
Regular II					
eat	<b>tabe-masu</b>	<b>tabete</b>	see	<b>mi-masu</b>	<b>mite</b>
show	<b>mise-masu</b>	<b>misete</b>	get off	<b>ori-masu</b>	<b>orite</b>
Irregular					
come	<b>ki-masu</b>	<b>kite</b>	do	<b>shimasu</b>	<b>shite</b>

\***iki-masu**, irregular change

- As shown above, the **-te** form can be made from the **-masu** form, although most Regular I verbs undergo a phonetic change.
- Use of **-te** form: The **-te** form of the verb occurs in the middle of sentences or combined with **kudasai** to form the polite imperative. It is used extensively and has various meanings which should be learned. Particular uses are explained in Lessons 19–25.

## 2. -nai Form

Regular I					
buy	<b>kai-masu</b>	<b>kawanai</b>	write	<b>kaki-masu</b>	<b>kakanai</b>
return	<b>kaeri-masu</b>	<b>kaeranai</b>	go	<b>iki-masu</b>	<b>ikanai</b>
wait	<b>machi-masu</b>	<b>matanai</b>			
Regular II					
eat	<b>tabe-masu</b>	<b>tabenai</b>	see	<b>mi-masu</b>	<b>minai</b>
show	<b>mise-masu</b>	<b>misenai</b>	get off	<b>ori-masu</b>	<b>orinai</b>
Irregular					
come	<b>ki-masu</b>	<b>konai</b>	do	<b>shi-masu</b>	<b>shinai</b>

- Use of the **-nai** form: A negative verb when used in mid-sentence usually takes the **-nai** form, rather than the **-masen** form it has at the end of a sentence. In this book, only the following use of the **-nai** form is given: verb **-nai de kudasai**, "Please do not . . ."

This verb **-nai + de + kudasai** is a polite prohibition. (While not included in this book, it should be noted that the **-nai** form does end negative sentences in familiar speech, which uses the dictionary form for present and future and the **-ta** form for the past tense.)

- Model Verb Conjugation

As can be inferred from the above, the conjugation of Japanese verbs falls into the following three categories:

Regular I: Five-vowel conjugation

Regular II: Single-vowel conjugation

Irregular: There are only two irregular verbs, **shimasu** and **kimasu**.

- Regular I verbs are conjugated according to the Japanese vowel order: **a, i, u, e, o**. Regular II verbs are based on the vowels **i** and **e** only. From the **-nai** form it can be seen whether a verb is Regular I or Regular II. If the vowel preceding **-nai** is **a**, it is a Regular I verb. If it is **i** or **e**, it is a Regular II verb.

	Regular I	Regular II
<b>-nai</b> form	<b>kaka-nai</b>	<b>tabe-nai</b>
<b>-masu</b> form	<b>kaki-masu</b>	<b>tabe-masu</b>
dictionary form	<b>kaku</b>	<b>taberu</b>
conditional form	<b>ka-ke-ba</b>	<b>tabe-re-ba</b>
volitional form	<b>ka-kō</b>	<b>tabe-yō</b>
<b>-te</b> form	<b>ka-ite</b>	<b>tabe-te</b>
<b>-ta</b> form	<b>ka-ita</b>	<b>tabe-ta</b>

- Of the seven forms above, this book includes the **-nai**, **-masu** and **-te** forms. These three forms, the dictionary form and the **-ta** form are given comprehensively in Appendix E.

## NOTES

---

### 1. Kinō Amerika kara Rinda-san ga kimashita.

**Rinda-san wa itsu made Nihon ni imasu ka.**

Since we hear about Linda for the first time in the first sentence, she takes the subject marker **ga**. As soon as the existence of Linda is understood by both speaker and listener, she becomes the topic, and then takes the topic marker **wa**.

### 2. Kyōto to Nara ni itte, furui o-tera ya niwa o mimasu.

When one action is followed by another, the first clause is terminated by the verb **-te** form. The subject of the first clause and the second clause is the same. This cannot be done unless the mood and the tense of both sentences are the same. The following two sentences *cannot* be connected by the verb **-te** form.

A. Statement: **Watashi wa kippu ga 2-mai arimasu.** "I have two tickets."

B. Suggestion: **Ashita issho ni eiga ni ikimashō.** "Let's go to the movies tomorrow."

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. [Watashi wa] Kinō shigoto no ato de tomodachi to shokuji o shite, 9-ji ni uchi ni kaerimashita.
2. Kurāku-san wa kyonen no 5-gatsu kara Nihon ni imasu. Soshite rainen no 3-gatsu made [Nihon ni] imasu.
3. Tanaka-san wa mainichi 2-jikan benkyō o shimasu.
4. Hayashi-san wa asa-gohan no mae ni rajio de nyūsu o kikimasu. Shokuji no ato de shimbun o yomimasu.

1. Yesterday, after work, I had a meal with my friends, and returned home at 9 o'clock.
2. Mr. Clark has been in Japan since last May and will stay until next March.
3. Mr. Tanaka studies two hours every day.
4. Mr. Hayashi listens to the news on the radio before breakfast. After the meal, he reads the newspaper.

### Vocabulary

shigoto no ato de	after work	-kan	for
no ato de	after	asa-gohan no mae ni	before breakfast
2-jikan	(for) 2 hours	no mae ni	before
-jikan	(counter)		

## EXERCISES

I Verbs: Memorize the following -te forms:

meet	ai-masu	atte	see	mi-masu	mite
go	iki-masu	itte	do	shi-masu	shite
read	yomi-masu	yonde	come	ki-masu	kite
eat	tabe-masu	tabete			

II Connect the sentences using the -te form as in the example given.

*ex.* Hon-ya ni ikimasu. Jisho o kaimasu.

Hon-ya ni itte, jisho o kaimasu.

1. Tanaka-san ni aimasu. isscho ni eiga ni ikimasu.
2. kabuki o mimasu. shokuji o shimasu. takushī de kaerimasu.
3. eiga o mimashō. shokuji o shimashō.
4. uchi ni kimasen ka. o-cha o nomimasen ka.
5. Sumisu-san ni aimashita. isscho ni tenisu o shimashita.

III Practice the following patterns by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Kurāku-san wa kyonen no 5-gatsu kara Nihon ni imasu. Soshite rainen no 3-gatsu made imasu.

1. kotoshi no 1-gatsu, rainen no 8-gatsu
2. senshū, raigetsu no 25-nichi

B. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Shigoto no mae ni shimbun o yomimasu.

1. kaigi
2. shokuji

C. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Shigoto no ato de Tanaka-san ni aimasu.

1. pāti
2. kaimono

IV Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Do-yōbi ni donogurai shigoto o shimasu ka.

A: 3-jikan dake shimasu.

1. benkyō, shimasu, 30-pun
2. hon, yomimasu, 1-jikan

B. *ex.* Q: Kinō shigoto no ato de nani o shimashita ka.

A: Tanaka-san ni atte, isscho ni ban-gohan o tabemashita.

1. hon-ya ni ikimasu. jisho o kaimasu.
2. tenisu o shimasu. uchi ni kaerimasu.

C. *ex.* Q: Nichi-yōbi ni nani o shimashō ka.

A: Ginza ni itte, kaimono o shimasen ka.

1. kabuki o mimasu. Ginza de shokuji o shimasu.
2. kōen ni ikimasu. hana o mimasu.

D. ex. Q: Howaito-san wa itsu kara Nihon ni imasu ka.

A: Kyonen no 8-gatsu kara imasu.

Q: Itsu made Nihon ni imasu ka.

A: Rainen no 10-gatsu made imasu.

1. 1980-nen, rainen
2. sengetsu no 15-nichi, asatte

### Vocabulary

donogurai    how long

## SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. Yamada: Howaito-san wa donogurai Nihon-go no benkyō o shimashita ka.  
Howaito: 4-shūkan dake shimashita. Mainichi 2-jikan shimashita.  
Yamada: Nihon-go no benkyō wa dō deshita ka.  
Howaito: Sukoshi muzukashikatta desu ga, omoshirokatta desu.

Yamada: How long did you study Japanese?

White: Only 4 weeks, 2 hours a day.

Yamada: How did you find Japanese?

White: It was a little difficult but fun.

2. Tanaka: O-sake wa ikaga desu ka.  
Hayashi: Kyō wa kekkō desu.  
Tanaka: Dōshite desu ka.  
Hayashi: Kuruma de kimashita kara.

Tanaka: Will you have some *sake*?

Hayashi: No, thank you, not today. (*lit.* "As for today, no thank you.")

Tanaka: Why?

Hayashi: Because I came by car (and thus I'm driving).

### Vocabulary

4-shūkan    4 weeks  
-shūkan    (counter)  
sukoshi    a little

## QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Rinda-san wa Sumisu-san no tomodachi desu ka, Hayashi-san no

tomodachi desu ka.

2. Rinda-san wa itsu Nihon ni kimashita ka.
3. Rinda-san wa itsu made Nihon ni imasu ka.
4. Rinda-san wa donogurai Tōkyō ni imasu ka.
5. Rinda-san wa Tōkyō kara doko ni ikimasu ka.
6. Rinda-san to Sumisu-san wa Kyōto ya Nara ni itte nani o shimasu ka.

II Convert the following verbs into their -te form.

- |             |              |            |              |
|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. tabemasu | 4. kimasu    | 7. imasu   | 10. nomimasu |
| 2. ikimasu  | 5. kakimasu  | 8. mimasu  | 11. aimasu   |
| 3. yomimasu | 6. kaerimasu | 9. shimasu | 12. kikimasu |

III Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Tanaka-san wa Amerika ni ( ) kara ( ) made imashita ka.  
1979-nen no 5-gatsu kara 1982-nen no 3-gatsu made imashita.
2. Ōsaka ni ( ) imashita ka.  
1-shūkan imashita.
3. ( ) Sumisu-san ni aimasu ka.  
Shigoto no ato de aimasu.

IV Circle the correct words in the parentheses.

1. Kyonen Nihon ni kimashita. (Soshite, To) rainen kaerimasu.
2. Ashita Kyōto ni (ikimasu to, itte), do-yōbi ni Tōkyō ni kaerimasu.
3. Tomodachi wa Tōkyō ni (donogurai, dō) imashita ka.
4. Kinō tenisu o 1-jikan (goro, gurai) shimashita.
5. Sono hon wa (donogurai, dō) desu ka.  
Omoshiroi desu.
6. Kaisha ni (nan, dō) de ikimasu ka.  
Chikatetsu de ikimasu.  
Kaisha made (dō, donogurai) desu ka.  
25-fun (goro, gurai) desu.

V Translate into Japanese.

1. Every morning I listen to the news and then go to the office.
2. I met Mr. Tanaka and had dinner with him. And then I went home.
3. How long do you study Japanese at home?  
Only 30 minutes. (*lit.* "(I) only do it for 30 minutes.")
4. I didn't go anywhere yesterday. I was at home.

---

LESSON **20** REQUESTS AND ORDERS

---

**Mr. Hayashi telephones a liquor store and orders some beer to be delivered.**

はやし：もしもし、はやしですが、ビールを 20ぽん もってきて  
ください。

さかや：なんじまでに とどけましょうか。

はやし：3じまでに うちに とどけてください。

さかや：はい、わかりました。ごじゅうしょを おねがいします。

はやし：あざぶ 2ちょうめ 2の1です。

さかや：すみません、もう いちど いってください。

はやし：あざぶ 2ちょうめ 2の1です。

さかや：まいど ありがとうございます。

■はやしさんは さかやに でんわを しました。さかやは はやし  
さんの じゅうしょを きいて、はやしさんの うちに ビールを  
とどけました。

**Hayashi: Moshi moshi, Hayashi desu ga, biru o 20-pon mottekite kudasai.**

**Saka-ya: Nanji made ni todokemashō ka.**

**Hayashi: 3-ji made ni uchi ni todokete kudasai.**

**Saka-ya: Hai, wakarimashita. Go-jūsho o onegaishimasu.**

**Hayashi: Azabu 2-chōme 2 no 1 desu.**

**Saka-ya: Sumimasen, mō ichi-do itte kudasai.**

**Hayashi: Azabu 2-chōme 2 no 1 desu.**

**Saka-ya: Maido arigatō gozaimasu.**

■ **Hayashi-san wa saka-ya ni denwa o shimashita. Saka-ya wa Hayashi-san  
no jūsho o kiite, Hayashi-san no uchi ni biru o todokemashita.**

Hayashi: Hello, this is Mr. Hayashi. Please bring me 20 bottles of beer.

Clerk: By what time should we deliver it?

Hayashi: Please deliver it to my house by 3:00.

Clerk: Certainly, sir. Please give me your address.

Hayashi: It's 2-1 Azabu 2-chōme.  
 Clerk: Excuse me, would you repeat that, please?  
 Hayashi: It's 2-1 Azabu 2-chōme.  
 Clerk: Thank you, sir.

■ Mr. Hayashi telephoned the liquor store. The liquor store clerk asked Mr. Hayashi for his address and delivered the beer to his house.

### Vocabulary

もってきて ください	<b>mottekite kudasai</b>	please bring
もってきます (もってくる)	<b>mottekimasu (mottekuru)</b>	bring
なんじまでに	<b>nan-ji made ni</b>	by what time
～までに	<b>made ni</b>	by
とどけましょうか	<b>todokemashō ka</b>	Shall we deliver?
とどけます (とどける)	<b>todokemasu (todokeru)</b>	deliver
とどけて ください	<b>todokete kudasai</b>	Please deliver . . .
2ちょうめ2の1	<b>2-chōme 2 no 1</b>	2-chōme 2-1
2ちょうめ	<b>2-chōme</b>	2-chōme
～ちょうめ	<b>-chōme</b>	chōme
いちど	<b>ichi-do</b>	once ( <i>lit.</i> "one time")
～ど	<b>-do</b>	time (counter)
いって ください	<b>itte kudasai</b>	Please say
いいます (いう)	<b>iimasu (iu)</b>	say
まいどありがとうございます	<b>maido arigatō gozaimasu</b>	Thank you (for your patronage) each time.
まいど	<b>maido</b>	each time

### NOTES

#### 1. 3-ji made ni

Do not confuse **3-ji made** and **3-ji made ni**.

*ex.* **15-nichi made Tokyo ni ite kudasai.** "Please stay in Tokyo until the 15."  
**15-nichi made ni Tokyo ni kite kudasai.** "Please come to Tokyo by the 15."

#### 2. Uchi ni todokete kudasai.

Requests are formed by verb **-te** + **kudasai**.

#### 3. Azabu 2-chōme 2 no 1

Japanese city addresses are typically made up of a place name (often combined with **machi** or **chō**, "town, community") + **chōme** + **banchi** + **gō**. **Chōme** are sections of the **machi**. They may be regular in shape, like a city block, or irregular, their borders being formed by streets or natural features such as

rivers. **Chōme** are subdivided into **banchi**, and the **gō** is the individual house or building number. In the address above, 2 no 1 is **banchi** number 2, house number 1. The words **banchi** and **gō** are frequently omitted both in speaking and in writing (except in legal documents).

## PRACTICE

### KEY SENTENCES

1. **Chotto matte kudasai.**
2. **Tsugi no kado o migi ni magatte kudasai.**
3. **Taipu o onegaishimasu.**

1. Just a moment, please.
2. Turn right at the next corner.
3. Please type this.

### Vocabulary

<b>matte kudasai</b>	please wait	<b>magatte kudasai</b>	please turn
<b>tsugi</b>	next	<b>magarimasu (magaru)</b>	turn
<b>kado</b>	corner	<b>taipu</b>	typing
<b>migi</b>	right		

## EXERCISES

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their **-te** form.

	<b>-masu form</b>	<b>-te form</b>		<b>-masu form</b>	<b>-te form</b>
wait	<b>machi-masu</b>	<b>matte</b>	deliver	<b>todoke-masu</b>	<b>todokete</b>
turn	<b>magari-masu</b>	<b>magatte</b>	show	<b>mise-masu</b>	<b>misete</b>
bring	<b>motteki-masu</b>	<b>mottekite</b>	stop, park	<b>tome-masu</b>	<b>tomete</b>
say	<b>ii-masu</b>	<b>itte</b>			

II Practice the following pattern by changing the **-masu** form to the **-te** form.

*ex.* **Chotto machimasu.** → **Chotto matte kudasai.**

1. **Menyū o misemasu.**
2. **Yukkuri iimasu.**
3. **Biru to jūsu o todokemasu.**

III Practice the following patterns by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* **Taipu o onegaishimasu.**

1. **kopī**
2. **kēki**
3. **sandoitchi to sarada**

B. *ex.* **Kopī o 3-mai onegaishimasu.**

1. **kēki, yottsu**
2. **biru, 2-hon**

C. *ex.* **Tsugi no kado o migi ni magatte kudasai.**

1. **shingō, migi**
2. **kōsaten, hidari**

IV Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* A: **Mado o akemashō ka.**

B: **Hai, akete kudasai.**

1. **doa, shimemasu**
2. **terebi, tsukemasu**
3. **rajio, keshimasu**
4. **jūsho to namae, kakimasu**
5. **denwa-bangō, iimasu**

B. *ex.* A: **Ashita denwa o shite kudasai.**

B: **Doko ni denwa o shimashō ka.**

A: **Kaisha ni [denwa o] shite kudasai.**

B: **Nan-ji ni [denwa o] shimashō ka.**

A: **10-ji made ni onegaishimasu.**

1. **hana o todokemasu**

### Vocabulary

<b>menyū</b>	menu	<b>shingō</b>	traffic light
<b>yukkuri</b>	slowly	<b>kōsaten</b>	intersection
<b>kēki</b>	cake	<b>hidari</b>	left

### SHORT DIALOGUE

**Ueitoresu:** **Irasshaimase.**

**Yamada:** **Kōcha to kēki o onegaishimasu.**

**Ueitoresu:** **Hai, shōshō omachi kudasai.**

**Waitress:** **Good afternoon, madam.**

**Yamada:** **(A cup of) Tea and some cake, please.**

**Waitress:** **Certainly, madam. (Wait) Just a moment, please.**

### Vocabulary

**ueitoresu** waitress

## QUIZ ■■■■■

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Hayashi-san wa doko ni denwa o shimashita ka.
2. Saka-ya wa doko ni biru o todokemasu ka.
3. Saka-ya wa biru o nan-bon todokemasu ka.
4. Saka-ya wa nan-ji made ni biru o todokemasu ka.
5. Hayashi-san wa saka-ya ni jūsho o oshiemashita ka.

II Convert the following verbs into their **-te** form.

- |              |               |                |              |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. iimasu    | 4. kikimasu   | 7. mottekimasu | 10. aimasu   |
| 2. imasu     | 5. magarimasu | 8. ikimasu     | 11. nomimasu |
| 3. machimasu | 6. misemasu   | 9. shimemasu   | 12. shimasu  |

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Kore ( ) kudasai.
2. Biru ( ) 5-hon ( ) kudasai.
3. Ashita 8-ji han made ( ) kite kudasai.
4. Kopi ( ) onegaishimasu.
5. Jūsu ( ) 5-hon ( ) biru ( ) 12-hon uchi ( ) mottekite kudasai.
6. Tsugi no kado ( ) hidari ( ) magatte kudasai.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. Please show me the menu.  
Certainly. Here you are.
2. Excuse me, but could you please deliver 12 bottles of beer to my house.  
Yes, certainly. It's Mr. Clark, isn't it?  
Yes, that's right.
3. Please give me this small TV set.  
Yes, certainly, sir. Shall I deliver it?  
No, that's all right. (Because) I came by car.

---

# LESSON 21 HAVING THINGS DONE

---

## Giving directions to a taxi driver.

はやし：       とうきょうえきの ちかくに 行ってください。

うんてんしゅ：はい。

はやし：       つぎの しんごうを みぎに まがって、まっすぐ  
                  行ってください。

はやし：       あの こうさてんの てまえで とめてください。

うんてんしゅ：1,200えんです。

はやし：       5,000えんで おねがいします。

うんてんしゅ：3,800えんのおつりです。

はやし：       どうも。

**Hayashi:**    **Tōkyō Eki no chikaku ni itte kudasai.**

**Untenshu:**   **Hai.**

**Hayashi:**    **Tsugi no shingō o migi ni magatte, massugu itte kudasai.**

**Hayashi:**    **Ano kōsaten no temae de tomete kudasai.**

**Untenshu:**    **1,200-en desu.**

**Hayashi:**    **5,000-en de onegaishimasu.**

**Untenshu:**    **3,800-en no otsuri desu.**

**Hayashi:**    **Dōmo.**

Hayashi: (I want to) go to the neighborhood of Tokyo Station, please.

Driver:    Yes, sir.

Hayashi: Please turn right at the next traffic light and go straight ahead.

Hayashi: Please stop just before that crossing.

Driver:    That's ¥1,200.

Hayashi: Please take it out of this ¥5,000.

Driver:    Here's (your) change, ¥3,800.

Hayashi: Thanks.

## Vocabulary

うんてんしゅ	untenshu	driver
まっすぐ	massugu	straight ahead
てまえ	temae	just before
とめて ください	tomete kudasai	Please stop.
とめます (とめる)	tomemasu (tomeru)	stop
おつり	otsuri	change
どうも	dōmo	thanks (colloquial)

## Making a reservation at a restaurant by telephone.

レストランの ひと： レストランとうきょうでございます。  
はやし： よやくを おねがいします。  
レストランの ひと： はい、ありがとうございます。いつですか。  
はやし： あしたの ばんです。7じころ おねがいします。  
レストランの ひと： なんにんさまですか。  
はやし： 6にんです。  
レストランの ひと： はい、わかりました。おなまえと おでんわばん  
ごうを どうぞ。

**Resutoran no hito:** Resutoran Tōkyō de gozaimasu.  
**Hayashi:** Yoyaku o onegaishimasu.  
**Resutoran no hito:** Hai, arigatō gozaimasu. Itsu desu ka.  
**Hayashi:** Ashita no ban desu. 7-ji goro onegaishimasu.  
**Resutoran no hito:** Nan-nin-sama desu ka.  
**Hayashi:** 6-nin desu.  
**Resutoran no hito:** Hai, wakarimashita. O-namae to o-denwa-bangō o dōzo.

Restaurant employee: This is Restaurant Tokyo.  
Hayashi: I'd like to make a reservation.  
Restaurant employee: Thank you. When would you like it for?  
Hayashi: Tomorrow evening, about 7 o'clock.  
Restaurant employee: For how many?  
Hayashi: Six.  
Restaurant employee: Certainly, sir. May I have your name and telephone number, please?

## Vocabulary

レストランとうきょう      Resutoran Tōkyō      Restaurant Tokyo

よやく	yoyaku	reservation
なんにんさま	nan-nin-sama	how many people (shopkeeper's expression)
～さま	-sama	politer form of -san

## Having things cleaned.

はやし： クリーニングを おねがいします。いつ できますか。

クリーニングや： すいようびの ごご できます。

■はやしさんは すいようびの ごご クリーニングやに きました。

はやし： もう できましたか。

クリーニングや： すみません。まだです。4じころ できます。

はやし： じゃ、また きます。

**Hayashi:** Kurīningu o onegaishimasu. Itsu dekimasu ka.

**Kurīningu-ya:** Sui-yōbi no gogo dekimasu.

■ Hayashi-san wa sui-yōbi no gogo kurīningu-ya ni ikimashita.

**Hayashi:** Mō dekimashita ka.

**Kurīningu-ya:** Sumimasen. Mada desu. 4-ji goro dekimasu.

**Hayashi:** Ja, mata kimasu.

Hayashi: I'd like to have this (these) cleaned. When will it (they) be done?

Clerk: It (they) will be done on Wednesday afternoon.

■ Mr. Hayashi went to the cleaner's on Wednesday afternoon.

Hayashi: Is it (are they) ready?

Clerk: I'm sorry, it's (they're) not finished yet. It (they) will be ready about 4:00.

Hayashi: I'll come back, then.

### Vocabulary

クリーニング	kurīningu	dry cleaning
できます (できる)	dekimasu (dekiru)	be ready (finished, done)
クリーニングや	kurīningu-ya	dry cleaner
まだです	mada desu	not yet
まだ	mada	yet

LESSON **22** PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION

**Mrs. Tanaka went to visit Haruko at the hospital. Mrs. Hayashi is going to visit her tomorrow and is asking how to get to Tokyo Hospital.**

たなか：せんしゅう　とうきょうびょういんに　いきました。

はやし：はるこさんは　どうでしたか。

たなか：あまり　げんきでは　ありませんでした。

はやし：どうやって　とうきょうびょういんに　いきましたか。わたし  
も　あした　いきます。

たなか：とうきょうえきで　80ばんの　バスに　のりました。あざぶ  
で　おりて、びょういんまで　5ふんぐらい　あるきました。

はやし：そうですか。とうきょうえきから　あざぶまで　どのぐらい  
かかりますか。

たなか：バスで　30ぷん　かかります。

■たなかさんの　おくさんは　せんしゅう　とうきょうびょういんに  
いきました。たなかさんの　おくさんは　とうきょうえきで　バスに  
のって、あざぶで　おりました。とうきょうえきから　あざぶまで  
30ぷん　かかりました。それから　びょういんまで　5ふんぐらい  
あるきました。

**Tanaka: Senshū Tōkyō Byōin ni ikimashita.**

**Hayashi: Haruko-san wa dō deshita ka.**

**Tanaka: Amari genki dewa arimasendeshita.**

**Hayashi: Dōyatte Tōkyō Byōin ni ikimashita ka. Watashi mo ashita iki-  
masu.**

**Tanaka: Tōkyō Eki de 80-ban no basu ni norimashita. Azabu de orite,  
byōin made 5-fun gurai arukimashita.**

**Hayashi: Sō desu ka. Tōkyō Eki kara Azabu made donogurai kakarimasu  
ka.**

**Tanaka: Basu de 30-pun kakarimasu.**

- **Tanaka-san no okusan wa senshū Tōkyō Byōin ni ikimashita. Tanaka-san no okusan wa Tōkyō Eki de basu ni notte, Azabu de orimashita. Tōkyō Eki kara Azabu made 30-pun kakarimashita. Sorekara byōin made 5-fun gurai arukimashita.**

Tanaka: I went to Tokyo Hospital last week.

Hayashi: How was Haruko?

Tanaka: She wasn't feeling very well.

Hayashi: How did you get to Tokyo Hospital? I'm going, too, tomorrow.

Tanaka: I took a No. 80 bus from Tokyo Station. I got off at Azabu and walked about 5 minutes to (get to) the hospital.

Hayashi: I see. How long does it take from Tokyo Station to Azabu?

Tanaka: It takes 30 minutes by bus.

- Mrs. Tanaka went to Tokyo Hospital last week. She took a bus from Tokyo Station and got off at Azabu. It took 30 minutes from Tokyo Station to Azabu. Then she walked about 5 minutes to Tokyo Hospital.

### Vocabulary

とうきょうびょういん	Tōkyō Byōin	Tokyo Hospital
どうやって	dōyatte	how
に	ni	on (particle)
のりました	norimashita	took, got on
のります (のる)	norimasu (noru)	take, get on
おりて	orite	get/got off (and)
おります (おりる)	orimasu (oriru)	get off
まで	made	to, as far as
あるきました	arukimashita	walked
あるきます (あるく)	arukimasu (aruku)	walk
かかります (かかる)	kakarimasu (kakaruru)	(it) takes

### NOTES

1. **Tōkyō Eki de basu ni norimashita. Azabu de (basu o) orimashita.**

Note the particles used: **basu NI norimasu**, "take/get on a bus"

**basu O orimasu**, "get off the bus"

**Tōkyō Eki DE**, "at Tokyo Station"

**Azabu DE**, "at Azabu"

2. **5-fun gurai**

An approximate time period is expressed by the suffix **-gurai**.

ex. **5-fun gurai**, "about 5 minutes"

**2-jikan gurai**, "about 2 hours"

**3-shūkan gurai**, "about 3 weeks"

Do not confuse with **goro**, which expresses an approximate specific time. (See Note 5, p. 89.)

### 3. Nan-pun, nan-jikan, nan-nichi

How many minutes, hours, days.

*ex.* **Nan-jikan kakarimasu ka.** "How long (*lit.* "how many hours") does it take?"

To ask in a more general way, **donogurai**, "how long," may be used.

*ex.* **Donogurai kakarimasu ka.** "How long does/will it take?"

**Donogurai** is also used to ask how much something will cost.

*ex.* **Donogurai/Ikura kakarimasu ka.** "How much will it cost?"

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

- Hikōki wa gozen 8-ji 10-pun ni Narita Kūkō o demasu.**
- Sumisu-san wa gogo 3-ji ni Narita Kūkō ni tsukimashita.**
- Tōkyō Eki de basu ni notte, Ginza de basu o orite kudasai.**
- [Watashi no] Uchi kara eki made basu de 10-pun kakarimasu.**

- The airplane leaves Narita Airport at 8:10 A.M.
- Mr. Smith arrived at Narita Airport at 3:00 P.M.
- Take the bus from Tokyo Station and get off at the Ginza.
- It takes 10 minutes by bus from my house to the station.

### Vocabulary

<b>o</b>	from (particle)
<b>demasu (deru)</b>	leave
<b>tsukimashita</b>	arrived
<b>tsukimasu (tsuku)</b>	arrive

## EXERCISES

---

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their **-te** form.

	<b>-masu form</b>	<b>-te form</b>		<b>-masu form</b>	<b>-te form</b>
go out, leave	<b>de-masu</b>	<b>dete</b>	get off	<b>ori-masu</b>	<b>orite</b>
arrive	<b>tsuki-masu</b>	<b>tsuite</b>	walk	<b>aruki-masu</b>	<b>aruite</b>
take, get on	<b>nori-masu</b>	<b>notte</b>	take	<b>kakari-masu</b>	<b>kakatte</b>

II Practice the following patterns by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* **[Watashi wa] Densha ni norimasu. Densha o orimasu.**

1. basu
  2. takushī
- B. *ex.* Tanaka-san wa hiru Ōsaka o demashita. Yūgata Tōkyō ni tsukimashita.
1. 6-ji ni, uchi, 7-ji ni, kaisha
  2. asa, Kyōto, 11-ji goro, Tōkyō no uchi

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

- A. *ex.* Q: Hikōki wa nan-ji ni Ōsaka o demasu ka.  
 A: Gozen 7-ji ni demasu.  
 Q: [Hikōki wa] Nan-ji ni Tōkyō ni tsukimasu ka.  
 A: Gozen 8-ji ni tsukimasu.
1. Shinkansen, gogo 1-ji, gogo 4-ji 10-pun
  2. Tanaka-san, gozen 10-ji, gogo 1-ji han
- B. *ex.* Q: Ueno Eki de nani ni norimashita ka.  
 A: Densha ni norimashita.  
 Q: Doko de densha o orimashita ka.  
 A: Tōkyō Eki de orimashita.
1. basu, kōen no mae
  2. takushī, uchi no chikaku

### Vocabulary

yūgata late afternoon, early evening  
 Ueno Ueno (place name)

### SHORT DIALOGUE

- Howaito: Yamada-san wa dōyatte kaisha ni ikimasu ka.  
 Yamada: Azabu de basu ni notte, Aoyama 1-chōme de orimasu. Aoyama 1-chōme kara chikatetsu ni notte, Nihombashi de orimasu. Soshite kaisha made 5-fun gurai arukimasu.  
 Howaito: O-taku kara kaisha made donogurai kakarimasu ka.  
 Yamada: 1-jikan gurai kakarimasu.
- White: How do you go to (your) office?  
 Yamada: I take a bus from Azabu and get off at Aoyama 1-chōme. I take the subway from Aoyama 1-chōme and get off at Nihombashi and walk about 5 minutes to my office.  
 White: How long does it take from your house to your office?  
 Yamada: It takes about one hour.

### Vocabulary

Aoyama Aoyama (place name)  
 Nihombashi Nihombashi (place name)

## QUIZ ■■■■■

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Tanaka-san no okusan wa itsu Tōkyō Byōin ni ikimashita ka.
2. Hayashi-san no okusan wa Tanaka-san no okusan to issho ni Tōkyō Byōin ni ikimashita ka.
3. Hayashi-san no okusan wa itsu Tōkyō Byōin ni ikimasu ka.
4. Tanaka-san no okusan wa doko de basu o orimashita ka.
5. Tōkyō Eki kara Azabu made basu de 1-jikan gurai kakarimashita ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Kaisha ni (     ) de ikimasu ka.  
Chikatetsu de ikimasu.
2. (     ) de basu o orimasu ka.  
Tōkyō Eki no mae de orimasu.
3. (     ) ni norimashō ka.  
Takushī ni norimasen ka. Tenki ga warui desu kara.
4. Tōkyō kara Ōsaka made Shinkansen de (     ) kakarimasu ka.  
3-jikan gurai kakarimasu.
5. (     ) koko ni kimashita ka.  
Tōkyō Eki de densha o orite, basu ni norimashita. Soshite kōen no chikaku de orite, aruite kimashita.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Tōkyō Eki (     ) basu (     ) notte, Ginza (     ) basu (     ) orite kudasai.
2. Asa Kyōto (     ) dete, 5-ji (     ) Tōkyō (     ) tsukimashita.  
Nan (     ) kimashita ka.  
Kuruma de kimashita.
3. Uchi kara eki (     ) basu (     ) 15-fun (     ) kakarimasu.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. There was a farewell party for a friend (of mine) at a hotel in the Ginza yesterday.
2. I left the office at 6 o'clock, took a bus, and got off at the Ginza.
3. How long did it take you from the office to the hotel?  
It took about 35 minutes.

---

LESSON **23** ASKING PERMISSION

---

**Mr. Smith went to an electrical appliance store.**

スミス： この テレビを つけても いいですか。

でんきや： はい、どうぞ。つけてください。

スミス： この テレビの カタログは ありますか。

でんきや： はい、その ケースの うえに あります。

スミス： もらっても いいですか。

でんきや： はい、どうぞ。

スミス： どうも ありがとう。

■スミスさんは でんきやで テレビの カタログを もらいました。

**Sumisu: Kono terebi o tsukete mo ii desu ka.**

**Denki-ya: Hai, dōzo tsukete kudasai.**

**Sumisu: Kono terebi no katarogu wa arimasu ka.**

**Denki-ya: Hai, sono kēsu no ue ni arimasu.**

**Sumisu: Moratte mo ii desu ka.**

**Denki-ya: Hai, dōzo.**

**Sumisu: Dōmo arigatō.**

■Sumisu-san wa denki-ya de terebi no katarogu o moraimashita.

Smith: May I turn this TV set on?

Salesman: Certainly, sir. (Please turn it on.)

Smith: Do you have a brochure about this set?

Salesman: Yes. (They're) On top of that showcase.

Smith: May I have one?

Salesman: Certainly, sir.

Smith: Thank you very much.

■Mr. Smith got a TV set brochure at an electrical appliance store.

**Vocabulary**

つけても いいですか      tsukete mo ii desu ka      May I turn it on?

でんきや	denki-ya	electrical appliance store or clerk
カタログ	katarogu	catalogue, brochure
ケース	kèsu	showcase

## NOTES

---

### 1. Terebi o tsukete mo ii desu ka.

(Terebi no katarogu o) Moratte mo ii desu ka.

Asking permission to do something is done using the following sentence construction.

Verb **-te** form + **mo ii desu ka**

Permission is given as follows. The first is politer than the second.

1. **Hai, dōzo.** "Yes, please (do)."

2. **Hai, ii desu.** "Yes, you may."

For refusal of permission, see Note 1, p. 155.

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Koko de shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.**

2. **Kono heya o tsukatte mo ii desu.**

1. May (I) take a photograph here?

2. You may use this room.

### Vocabulary

<b>shashin o totte mo ii desu ka</b>	May (I) take a photograph?
<b>shashin o torimasu (toru)</b>	take a photograph
<b>tsukatte mo ii desu</b>	You may use it.
<b>tsukaimasu (tsukau)</b>	use

## EXERCISES

---

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their **-te** form.

	<b>-masu</b> form	<b>-te</b> form
take (a photograph)	(shashin o) tori-masu	totte
use	tsukai-masu	tsukatte
go in, enter	hairi-masu	haitte

## II Practice the following patterns.

A. *ex.* **Shashin o torimasu.** —————→ **Shashin o totte mo ii desu.**  
—————→ **Shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.**

1. **kono heya o tsukaimasu**
2. **kono mizu o nomimasu**
3. **rajio o tsukemasu**
4. **mado o akemasu**
5. **daidokoro ni hairimasu**

## III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* A: **Kono katarogu o moratte mo ii desu ka.**

B: **Hai, dōzo.**

1. **kamera no katarogu o moraimasu**
2. **kono pen o tsukaimasu**
3. **o-tearai o tsukaimasu**
4. **koko de shashin o torimasu**
5. **kono mizu o nomimasu**
6. **daidokoro ni hairimasu**

B. *ex.* A: **Mado o akete mo ii desu ka.**

B: **Hai, dōzo. Akete kudasai.**

1. **rajio, tsukemasu**
2. **doa, shimemasu**

### Vocabulary

pen pen

## SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. Yamada: **Ashita 2-ji goro denwa o shite mo ii desu ka.**

Hayashi: **Sumimasen ga, 2-ji goro uchi ni imasen kara, 6-ji goro onegaishimasu.**

Yamada: **Hai, wakarimashita.**

Yamada: **May I call you about 2 o'clock tomorrow?**

Hayashi: **I'm sorry, but I won't be at home about 2:00, so call me about 6:00.**

Yamada: **I see.**

2. Ten'in: **Go-jūsho to o-namae o onegaishimasu.**

Hayashi: **Sumimasen. Pen ga arimasen. Kono pen o tsukatte mo ii desu ka.**

Ten'in: **Hai, dōzo.**

Clerk: **Your name and address, please.**

Hayashi: I'm afraid I don't have a pen. May I use this pen?

Clerk: Certainly. Please do.

3. **Tanaka:** Koko wa yūmeina o-tera desu. Naka ni hairimashō.

**Sumisu:** Subarashii niwa desu ne. Kono niwa no shashin o totte mo ii desu ka.

**Tanaka:** Sā, wakarimasen. Ano hito ni kikimashō.

**Tanaka:** This is a famous temple. Let's go inside.

**Smith:** What a wonderful garden. May I take a picture of this garden?

**Tanaka:** Well, I don't know. Let's ask that man over there.

### Vocabulary

subarashii wonderful (-i adj.)

sā well . . .

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Sumisu-san wa doko de katarogu o moraimashita ka.
2. Sumisu-san wa nan no katarogu o moraimashita ka.
3. Katarogu wa kēsu no naka ni arimashita ka.
4. Katarogu wa doko ni arimashita ka.

II Convert the following verbs into their -te form.

- |              |               |             |             |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. hairimasu | 4. mimasu     | 7. shimasu  | 10. ikimasu |
| 2. kimasu    | 5. tsukaimasu | 8. torimasu | 11. imasu   |
| 3. tabemasu  | 6. nomimasu   | 9. kikimasu | 12. iimasu  |

III Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the verbs indicated.

1. Koko de shashin o ( ) mo ii desu ka. (torimasu)
2. Issho ni tenisu o ( ) masen ka. (shimasu)  
Ee, ( ) mashō. (shimasu)
3. Mado o ( ) mashō ka. (akemasu)  
Hai, ( ) kudasai. (akemasu)
4. Kono denwa o ( ) mo ii desu ka. (tsukaimasu)  
Sumimasen, chotto ( ) kudasai. (machimasu)
5. Ashita nan-ji ni ( ) mashō ka. (kimasu)  
8-ji han ni ( ) kudasai. (kimasu)
6. Kono katarogu o ( ) mo ii desu ka. (moraimasu)
7. Hon o ( ), uchi ni kaerimashita. (kaimasu)

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. Shall I turn on the light?

Yes, please.

2. May I use this telephone?

Yes, of course. (*lit.* "please.")

3. Is it O.K. to stay here till 3 o'clock?

---

LESSON **24** REFUSAL

---

**A man parked his car in a “No Parking” area.**

けいかん： もしもし、ここは ちゅうしゃきんしですから、くるま  
をとめないでください。

おとこのひと： すみません。この ちかくに ちゅうしゃじょうが  
ありますか。

けいかん： ええ、つぎの かどを ひだりに まがってください。  
ひだりがわに ちゅうしゃじょうが あります。

おとこのひと： どうも ありがとう。

■ けいかんは おとこのひとに ちゅうしゃじょうを おしえました。

**Keikan:** Moshi moshi, koko wa “Chūsha Kinshi” desu kara, kuruma  
o tomenaide kudasai.

**Otoko no hito:** Sumimasen. Kono chikaku ni chūshajō ga arimasu ka.

**Keikan:** Ee, tsugi no kado o hidari ni magatte kudasai. Hidari-gawa  
ni chūshajō ga arimasu.

**Otoko no hito:** Dōmo arigatō.

■ **Keikan wa otoko no hito ni chūshajō o oshiemashita.**

Policeman: I say, this is a “No Parking” (area), so don’t park (your) car here.

Man: I’m sorry. Is there a place to park nearby?

Policeman: Yes. Turn left at the next corner. There’s a parking lot on the left-hand side.

Man: Thank you very much.

■ A policeman directed the man to a parking lot.

**Vocabulary**

けいかん	keikan	policeman
もしもし	moshi moshi	I say
ちゅうしゃきんし	chūsha kinshi	No Parking
とめないで ください	tomenaide kudasai	Do not park.
とめます (とめる)	tomemasu (tomeru)	park

ちゅうしゃじょう  
ひだりがわ

chūshajō  
hidari-gawa

parking lot  
left-hand side

## NOTE

---

### 1. Tomenaide kudasai

The “please do not . . .” construction is formed as follows: verb **nai** + **de** + **kudasai**

(For explanation of the **-nai** form, see Grammar IX, p. 130).

For refusal of permission, **ie, dame desu**, “No, you can’t,” is sometimes used. **Dame**, “no good, useless, hopeless, out of the question,” is a frequently used word in Japanese. Straightforward prohibitive requests such as this are seldom used in politer society. Instead, one says, **Sumimasen, ga**, “Excuse me, but . . .” “I’m sorry, but . . .” and simply gives the reason for not wanting something done,

*ex.* **O-taku ni kuruma de itte mo ii desu ka.** “Is it all right to go to your house by car?”

**Sumimasen ga, chūshajō ga arimasen kara . . .** “I’m sorry, but there’s no parking place.”

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Koko de tabako o suwanaide kudasai.**

2. **Koko wa “Chūsha Kinshi” desu kara, kuruma o tomenaide kudasai.**

1. Please don’t smoke here.

2. This is a “No Parking” (area), so don’t park (your) car here.

### Vocabulary

**tabako** tobacco, cigarette  
**suwanaide kudasai** Do not smoke.  
**suimasu (suu)** smoke, inhale

## EXERCISES

---

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their **-nai** form.

	<b>-masu</b> form	<b>-te</b> form	<b>-nai</b> form
inhale	<b>sui-masu</b>	<b>sutte</b>	<b>suwanai</b>
stop, park	<b>tome-masu</b>	<b>tomete</b>	<b>tomenai</b>

take (a photograph)	(shashin o) tori-masu	totte	toranai
use	tsukai-masu	tsukatte	tsukawanai
open	ake-masu	akete	akenai
close	shime-masu	shimete	shimenai

## II Practice the following pattern.

*ex.* tabako o suimasu → Tabako o suwanaide kudasai.

1. kuruma o tomemasu
2. shashin o torimasu
3. kono heya o tsukaimasu
4. mado o akemasu
5. doa o shimemasu

## III Make dialogues by changing the underlined part as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* A: Doa o shimete mo ii desu ka.

B: Iie, shimenaide kudasai. Atsui desu kara.

1. mado
2. kono doa

B. *ex.* A: Koko wa iriguchi desu kara, kuruma o tomenaide kudasai.

B: Dōmo sumimasen.

1. deguchi
2. mise no mae

### Vocabulary

deguchi exit

## SHORT DIALOGUES

1. **Otoko no hito:** Koko de tabako o sutte mo ii desu ka.

**Sumisu:** Sumimasen ga, suwanaide kudasai.

Man: May I smoke here?

Smith: I'm afraid not. (*lit.* "I'm sorry, please don't.")

2. **Onna no hito:** Denki o keshimashō ka.

**Tanaka:** Iie, ima kara kono heya o tsukaimasu kara, kesanaide kudasai.

Woman: Shall I turn off the light?

Tanaka: No, we are going to use this room (from now), so don't turn it off.

## QUIZ ■■■■■

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. **Dare ga otoko no hito ni chūshajō o oshiemashita ka.**
2. **Otoko no hito wa doko o hidari ni magarimasu ka.**
3. **Otoko no hito wa tsugi no kado o hidari ni magatte, doko ni ikimasu ka.**

II Convert the following verbs into their **-nai** form.

- |                    |                       |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <b>tabemasu</b> | 6. <b>yomimasu</b>    | 11. <b>keshimasu</b>  |
| 2. <b>mimasu</b>   | 7. <b>shimasu</b>     | 12. <b>tsukemasu</b>  |
| 3. <b>ikimasu</b>  | 8. <b>suimasu</b>     | 13. <b>tsukaimasu</b> |
| 4. <b>kimasu</b>   | 9. <b>akemasu</b>     | 14. <b>shimemasu</b>  |
| 5. <b>iimasu</b>   | 10. <b>magarimasu</b> | 15. <b>torimasu</b>   |

III Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the verbs indicated.

1. **Koko de tabako o ( ) mo ii desu ka.** (suimasu)  
**Iie, sumimasen ga, ( ) kudasai.** (suimasu)
2. **Mado o ( ) mo ii desu ka.** (akemasu)  
**Hai, ( ) mo ii desu.** (akemasu)
3. **Ashita o-taku ni ( ) mo ii desu ka.** (ikimasu)  
**Hai, dōzo ( ) kudasai.** (kimasu)
4. **Doa o ( ) mashō ka.** (shimemasu)  
**Iie, ( ) kudasai. Atsui desu kara.** (shimemasu)

IV Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. **Koko ( ) “Chūsha Kinshi” desu ( ), kuruma ( ) tome-naide kudasai.**
2. **Tsugi no kado ( ) hidari ( ) magatte kudasai.**
3. **Densha ( ) tabako ( ) suwanaide kudasai.**
4. **Kinō no asa 8-ji goro uchi ( ) dete, yoru 10-ji ( ) kaerimashita.**

V Translate into Japanese.

1. Please do not go into that room now.
2. Please do not smoke here.
3. Turn right at the next traffic light.

LESSON **25** NOW IN PROGRESS

**Mr. Hayashi is looking for Mr. Smith. He knocks on the door.**

はやし：すみません、スミスさんは いますか。

ひしょ：いいえ、いません。3がいの かいぎしつに います。

はやし：かいぎを していますか。

ひしょ：いいえ、スライドを みています。

はやし：どうも。

■スミスさんは かいぎしつで スライドを みています。

**Hayashi: Sumimasen, Sumisu-san wa imasu ka.**

**Hisho: Iie, imasen. 3-gai no kaigi-shitsu ni imasu.**

**Hayashi: Kaigi o shite imasu ka.**

**Hisho: Iie, suraido o mite imasu.**

**Hayashi: Dōmo.**

■Sumisu-san wa kaigi-shitsu de suraido o mite imasu.

Hayashi: Excuse me, is Mr. Smith here?

Secretary: No, he isn't. He's in the conference room on the third floor.

Hayashi: Is he in conference?

Secretary: No. He's looking at (some) slides.

Hayashi: Thanks.

■Mr. Smith is looking at slides in the conference room.

**Vocabulary**

かいぎしつ	<b>kaigi-shitsu</b>	conference room
～しつ	<b>-shitsu</b>	room
かいぎを して います (して いる)	<b>kaigi o shite imasu</b> <b>(shite iru)</b>	is in conference
スライド	<b>suraido</b>	slide
みて います(みて いる)	<b>mite imasu (mite iru)</b>	is looking

## NOTES

---

### 1. Kaigi o shite imasu.

#### Suraido o mite imasu.

The present progressive is expressed as follows: verb **-te** + **imasu**.

This construction expresses either action that is presently going on or action that regularly takes place.

*ex.* **Sumisu-san wa maishū Taimu o yonde imasu.** "Mr. Smith reads *Time* every week."

There is also the past progressive.

*ex.* **Kinō no gogo nani o shite imashita ka.** "What were you doing yesterday afternoon?"

### 2. Dōmo

A colloquial shortening of **dōmo arigatō**, "Thank you so much." It is also widely used as an abbreviation of **dōmo sumimasen**, "I'm sorry." It is not especially polite.

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Yamada-san wa ima denwa o shite imasu.**
2. **Howaito-san wa ima shigoto o shite imasu.**

1. Mr. Yamada is making a telephone call now.
2. Miss White is working now.

### Vocabulary

- denwa o shite imasu** is telephoning  
**shigoto o shite imasu** is working

## EXERCISES

---

I Verbs: Memorize the following **-te imasu** forms.

		Present Progressive	
		<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
	<b>-masu form</b>	<b>-te imasu</b>	<b>-te imasen</b>
talk	<b>hanashi o shi-masu</b>	<b>hanashi o shite imasu</b>	<b>hanashi o shite imasen</b>
read	<b>yomi-masu</b>	<b>yonde imasu</b>	<b>yonde imasen</b>
listen	<b>kiki-masu</b>	<b>kiite imasu</b>	<b>kiite imasen</b>
write	<b>kaki-masu</b>	<b>kaite imasu</b>	<b>kaite imasen</b>

Past Progressive		
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
	-te imashita	-te imasendeshita
talk	hanashi o shite imashita	hanashi o shite imasendeshita
read	yonde imashita	yonde imasendeshita
listen	kiite imashita	kiite imasendeshita
write	kaite imashita	kaite imasendeshita

II Practice the following pattern.

- ex.* hon o yomimasu → Tanaka-san wa hon o yonde imasu.  
 Tanaka-san wa  
 Tanaka-san wa  
 Tanaka-san wa
1. rajio o kikimasu
  2. tegami o kakimasu
  3. tomodachi to hanashi o shimasu

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

- A. *ex.* Q: Ima hon o yonde imasu ka.  
 Aa: Hai, yonde imasu.  
 An: Iie, yonde imasen.
1. kōhī, nomimasu
  2. tegami, kakimasu
  3. shigoto, shimasu
- B. *ex.* Q: Dare ga denwa o shite imasu ka.  
 A: Howaito-san ga [denwa o] shite imasu.
1. terebi o mimasu, Yamada-san
  2. tegami o kakimasu, Sumisu-san
- C. *ex.* Q: Yamada-san wa nani o shite imasu ka.  
 A: Shimbun o yonde imasu.
1. Howaito-san, denwa o shimasu
  2. Ichirō-san, terebi o mimasu
  3. Tanaka-san, biru o nomimasu
- D. *ex.* Q: Yamada-san wa doko de shashin o totte imasu ka.  
 A: Niwa de [shashin o] totte imasu.
1. denwa o shimasu, tonari no heya
  2. hon o yomimasu, ima
- E. *ex.* Q: Yamada-san wa ima kōhī o nonde imasu ka.  
 A: Iie, shimbun o yonde imasu.
1. denwa o shimasu, tegami o kakimasu
  2. kaigi o shimasu, shokuji o shimasu
  3. shashin o torimasu, Howaito-san to hanashi o shimasu

## Vocabulary

hanashi o shimasu (suru) talk  
Ichirō a given name (male)

## SHORT DIALOGUE

---

Hayashi: Yamada-san wa ima doko ni imasu ka.  
Howaito: Tonari no heya ni imasu.  
Hayashi: [Yamada-san wa] Ima nani o shite imasu ka.  
Howaito: Okyaku-san to hanashi o shite imasu.

Hayashi: Where is Miss Yamada now?  
White: [She's] In the next room.  
Hayashi: What's she doing now?  
White: [She's] Talking with a client.

## Vocabulary

o-kyaku-san client

## QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Sumisu-san wa 2-kai ni imasu ka, 3-gai ni imasu ka.
2. Sumisu-san wa 3-gai no doko ni imasu ka.
3. Sumisu-san wa nani o shite imasu ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Tanaka-san wa ima ( ) ni imasu ka.  
2-kai ni imasu.  
2-kai de ( ) o shite imasu ka.  
Tegami o kaite imasu.
2. Hayashi-san wa ( ) de shashin o totte imasu ka.  
Asoko de totte imasu.
3. Sumisu-san wa ( ) to hanashi o shite imasu ka.  
Sumisu-san no hisho to hanashi o shite imasu.
4. Howaito-san wa ( ) ni denwa o shite imasu ka.  
Kaisha ni shite imasu.

III Translate into Japanese.

1. Mr. Hayashi will telephone Mr. Smith.

2. Mr. Hayashi is telephoning Mr. Smith.
3. What is that girl over there doing?  
She is waiting for a friend.
4. Miss White is not working now.

---

LESSON **26** READING REVIEW

---

■すずきさんが ブラウンさんの うちに でんわを しました。すずきさんは ブラウンさんの ともだちです。

すずき： もしもし、すずきですが、ブラウンさんの おたくですか。

ブラウン： あ、すずきさん、こんばんは。

すずき： ブラウンさん、らいしゅうの どのようびの ばん、わたしの  
うちで パーティーを します。わたしの たんじょうびの  
パーティーです。おくさんと いっしょに きませんか。

ブラウン： どうも ありがとうございます。よろこんで いきます。

すずき： では、どのようびに。

ブラウン： おでんわ どうも ありがとうございます。

■きょうは パーティーの ひです。

ブラウンさんと おくさんが すずきさんの うちに つきました。

すずき： よく いらっしゃいました。こちらへ どうぞ。

ブラウン： おまねき ありがとうございます。これを どうぞ。

すずき： きれいな はなですね。どうも ありがとうございます。

ブラウン： この ワインも どうぞ。

すずき： みなさんに ごしょうかい しますから、どうぞ こちらへ。

■とても にぎやかな パーティーです。

■12じです。みんなは かえります。

すずきさんの ともだち： ブラウンさん、くるまで きましたか。

ブラウン： いいえ、でんしゃで きました。

すずきさんの ともだち：おそいですから わたしの くるまで かえりませんか。

ブラウン：　　そうですか。ありがとうございます。おねがいします。

みんな：　　とても たのしかったです。きょうは どうも ありがとうございます。

すずき：　　どういたしまして。わたしも たのしかったです。また きてください。

すずきさんの おくさん：どうぞ きをつけて。

みんな：　　おやすみなさい。

すずき：　　おやすみなさい。

■ Suzuki-san ga Buraun-san no uchi ni denwa o shimashita. Suzuki-san wa Buraun-san no tomodachi desu.

Suzuki: Moshi moshi, Suzuki desu ga, Buraun-san no o-taku desu ka.  
 Buraun: A, Suzuki-san, kombanwa.  
 Suzuki: Buraun-san, raishū no do-yōbi no ban, watashi no uchi de pāti o shimasu. Watashi no tanjōbi no pāti desu. Okusan to issho ni kimasen ka.  
 Buraun: Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu. Yorokonde ikimasu.  
 Suzuki: Dewa, do-yōbi ni.  
 Buraun: O-denwa dōmo arigatō gozaimashita.

■ Kyō wa pāti no hi desu. Buraun-san to okusan ga Suzuki-san no uchi ni tsukimashita.

Suzuki: Yoku irasshaimashita. Kochira e dōzo.  
 Buraun: Omaneki arigatō gozaimasu. Kore o dōzo.  
 Suzuki: Kireina hana desu ne. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.  
 Buraun: Kono wain mo dōzo.  
 Suzuki: Mina-san ni go-shōkai shimasu kara, dōzo kochira e.

■ Totemo nigiyakana pāti desu.

■ 12-ji desu. Minna wa kaerimasu.

Suzuki-san no tomodachi: Buraun-san, kuruma de kimashita ka.  
 Buraun: Iie, densha de kimashita.  
 Suzuki-san no tomodachi: Osoi desu kara, watashi no kuruma de kaerimasen ka.

**Buraun:** Sō desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu. Onegaishimasu.  
**Minna:** Totemo tanoshikatta desu. Kyō wa dōmo arigatō gozaimashita.  
**Suzuki:** Dō itashimashite. Watashi mo tanoshikatta desu. Mata kite kudasai.  
**Suzuki-san no okusan:** Dōzo ki o tsukete.  
**Minna:** Oyasumi nasai.  
**Suzuki:** Oyasumi nasai.

■ Mr. Suzuki telephoned the Browns' house. Mr. Suzuki is a friend of Mr. Brown's.

**Suzuki:** Hello. This is Suzuki. Is this the Browns' residence?  
**Brown:** Ah, Mr. Suzuki! Good evening.  
**Suzuki:** Mr. Brown, we're having a party at my house next Saturday evening. It's my birthday party. Won't you come, together with Mrs. Brown?  
**Brown:** Thank you very much. We'll be happy to come.  
**Suzuki:** Well then, (see you) on Saturday.  
**Brown:** Thank you for your telephone call.

■ Today is the day of the party. Mr. and Mrs. Brown have arrived at Mr. Suzuki's house.

**Suzuki:** How nice of you to come. This way, please.  
**Brown:** Thank you for your invitation. These are for you.  
**Suzuki:** What lovely flowers! Thank you very much.  
**Brown:** This wine is for you, too.  
**Suzuki:** Come this way and I'll introduce you to everybody.

■ It is a very lively party.

■ (Now) It is 12 o'clock. Everyone is leaving.

**Mr. Suzuki's friend:** Mr. Brown, did you come by car?  
**Brown:** No, we came by train.  
**Mr. Suzuki's friend:** Since it's late, can't I drive you home? (*lit.* "Won't you go home in my car?")  
**Brown:** Oh, would you (do that)? Thank you. (*lit.* "I'm happy to accept your offer.")  
**All:** It was very enjoyable. Thank you very much for today.  
**Suzuki:** You're welcome. I enjoyed it too. Please come again.  
**Mrs. Suzuki:** Please be careful (on your way home).  
**All:** Good-night!  
**The Suzukis:** Good-night!

## Vocabulary

すずき

Suzuki

a surname

よろこんで	<b>yorokonde</b>	(I'd) be happy to.
ひ	<b>hi</b>	day
おまねき ありがとう	<b>omaneki arigatō gozaimasu</b>	Thank you for your invitation.
ございます		
ワイン	<b>wain</b>	wine
みなさん	<b>mina-san</b>	everyone (excluding the speaker and his or her group)
みんな	<b>minna</b>	everyone
おそい	<b>osoi</b>	late (-i adj.)
きを つけて	<b>ki o tsukete</b>	take care, be careful

---

LESSON **27** PRESENT CONDITION

---

**Mr. Smith tells Mr. Hayashi that his brother has arrived in Japan.**

スミス：せんしゅう あにが アメリカから にほんに きました。

はやし：おにいさんは おくさんと いっしょに きましたか。

スミス：いいえ、しごとですから ひとりで きました。いま きょうとに いています。あには りょこうがいしゃに つとめています。

はやし：おにいさんは いつまで きょうとに いますか。

スミス：こんしゅうの すいようびまで います。それから ホンコンに いて、アメリカに かえります。

はやし：アメリカの どこに すんでいますか。

スミス：ニューヨークに すんでいます。

■スミスさんの おにいさんは りょこうがいしゃに つとめています。せんしゅう にほんに きました。いま きょうとに いています。

**Sumisu: Senshū ani ga Amerika kara Nihon ni kimashita.**

**Hayashi: O-niisan wa okusan to issho ni kimashita ka.**

**Sumisu: Iie, shigoto desu kara, hitori de kimashita. Ima Kyōto ni itte imasu. Ani wa ryokō-gaisha ni tsutomete imasu.**

**Hayashi: O-niisan wa itsu made Kyōto ni imasu ka.**

**Sumisu: Konshū no sui-yōbi made imasu. Sorekara Honkon ni itte, Amerika ni kaerimasu.**

**Hayashi: Amerika no doko ni sunde imasu ka.**

**Sumisu: Nyū Yōku ni sunde imasu.**

■Sumisu-san no o-niisan wa ryokō-gaisha ni tsutomete imasu. Senshū Nihon ni kimashita. Ima Kyōto ni itte imasu.

Smith: My (older) brother came to Japan from America last week.

Hayashi: Did your brother come with his wife?

- Smith: No, he came on business, so he came alone. He's in Kyoto now. My brother works for a travel agency.
- Hayashi: How long will your brother be in Kyoto?
- Smith: He'll be there until this week Wednesday. After that he'll go to Hong Kong, then return to America.
- Hayashi: Where does he live in America?
- Smith: He lives in New York (City).

■ Mr. Smith's (older) brother works for a travel agency. He came to Japan last week. Now he is in Kyoto.

### Vocabulary

あに	ani	(my) older brother
おにいさん	o-niisan	(your) older brother
りょこうがいしゃ	ryokō-gaisha	travel agency
つとめて います	tsutomete imasu	be employed, work for
つとめます (つとめる)	tsutomemasu (tsutomeru)	serve, hold a post
ホンコン	Honkon	Hong Kong
すんで います	sunde imasu	live ( <i>lit.</i> "is living")
すみます (すむ)	sumimasu (sumu)	live
ニューヨーク	Nyū Yōku	New York

### NOTES

#### 1. Ima Kyōto ni itte imasu.

Verb **-te imasu** is used here. The sentence literally means, "Having gone to Kyoto, he is there now." Other common examples of this usage are, **Tanaka-san wa kekkon shite imasu**. "Mr. Tanaka is married." (*lit.* "Mr. Tanaka, having got married, is married.") And **Bengoshi wa mō kimashita ka**. "Has the lawyer come yet?" **Hai, kite imasu**. "Yes, he has."

#### 2. Ani wa ryokō-gaisha ni tsutomete imasu.

The particle used with the verb **tsutomeru** is **ni**. Here again the verb **-te** form is used.

When asked what kind of work they do, Japanese usually reply by giving their place of work rather than the type of work. Note also that in Japanese siblings are always referred to as older or younger brothers or sisters, for which there are separate words. I.e., **ani**, "my older brother," **otōto**, "my younger brother," **o-nii-san**, "your older brother," **otōto-san**, "your younger brother," etc. Note the following terms for one's own and for other person's relatives.

	Related to the Speaker	Related to Others
family	<b>kazoku</b>	<b>go-kazoku</b>
husband	<b>shujin</b>	<b>go-shujin</b>
wife	<b>kanai</b>	<b>okusan</b>
child	<b>kodomo</b>	<b>kodomo-san/okosan</b>
son	<b>musuko</b>	<b>musuko-san/botchan</b>
daughter	<b>musume</b>	<b>musume-san/ojō-san</b>
parents	<b>ryōshin</b>	<b>go-ryōshin</b>
father	<b>chichi</b>	<b>o-tōsan</b>
mother	<b>haha</b>	<b>o-kāsan</b>
grandfather	<b>sofu</b>	<b>oji-san</b>
grandmother	<b>sobo</b>	<b>obā-san</b>
brothers and sisters	<b>kyōdai</b>	<b>go-kyōdai</b>
older brother	<b>ani</b>	<b>o-nii-san</b>
older sister	<b>ane</b>	<b>o-nē-san</b>
younger brother	<b>otōto</b>	<b>otōto-san</b>
younger sister	<b>imōto</b>	<b>imōto-san</b>
grandchild	<b>mago</b>	<b>o-mago-san</b>
uncle	<b>oji</b>	<b>oji-san</b>
aunt	<b>oba</b>	<b>oba-san</b>
nephew	<b>oi</b>	<b>oigo-san</b>
niece	<b>mei</b>	<b>meigo-san</b>
cousin	<b>itoko</b>	<b>o-itoko-san</b>

### 3. Nyū Yōku ni sunde imasu.

In describing where people live, the verb **-te** form is used. **Uru**, the verb meaning “sell” and **shiru**, “know,” similarly use the **-te** form.

## PRACTICE

### KEY SENTENCES

1. **Sumisu-san no o-niisan wa ima Nihon ni kite imasu.**
2. **Kurāku-san wa Tōkyō ni sunde imasu.**
3. **Hayashi-san wa Nihon Ginkō ni tsutomete imasu.**
4. **Watashi wa Tanaka-san o yoku shitte imasu.**
5. **Chika 1-kai de niku ya sakana o utte imasu.**

1. Mr. Smith's older brother is in Japan now.
2. Mr. Clark lives in Tokyo.
3. Mr. Hayashi works for the Bank of Japan.
4. I know Mr. Tanaka well.
5. They sell meat, fish (and other things) in the first basement.

## Vocabulary

shitte imasu (shiru)	know
chika 1-kai	first basement
chika	basement ( <i>lit.</i> "underground")
utte imasu	sell ( <i>lit.</i> "is selling")
urimasu (uru)	sell

## EXERCISES

I Verbs: Memorize the following verbs and their **-te imasu** forms.

	-masu form	-te imasu form	
		<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
live	sumi-masu	sunde imasu	sunde imasen
work for	tsutome-masu	tsutomete imasu	tsutomete imasen
know	*	shitte imasu	shirimasen**
sell	uri-masu	utte imasu	utte imasen

\*The form **shirimasu** is never used; **shitte imasu** replaces it.

\*\*The negative of **shitte imasu** is the irregular **shirimasen**.

II Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

ex. [Watashi wa] Tōkyō ni sunde imasu.

1. Tōkyō no Azabu
2. kaisha no chikaku

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A ex. Q: Howaito-san wa ima Nihon ni kite imasu ka.

Aa: Hai, kite imasu. Sengetsu [Nihon ni] kimashita.

An: Iie, kite imasen. Raigetsu [Nihon ni] kimasu.

1. Tōkyō, kimasu
2. gaikoku, ikimasu

B. ex. Q: Tanaka-san o shitte imasu ka.

Aa: Hai, shitte imasu.

An: Iie, shirimasen.

1. Howaito-san
2. Yamada-san no jūsho
3. Hayashi-san no atarashii denwa-bangō
4. ii niku-ya

C. *ex.* Q: Tanaka-san no tomodachi wa doko ni tsutomete imasu ka.

A: Taishikan ni tsutomete imasu.

1. depāto
2. gakkō
3. ryokō-gaisha

D. *ex.* Q: Kasa wa doko de utte imasu ka.

A: 1-kai de utte imasu.

1. sētā, 4-kai
2. kutsu, 6-kai
3. kitte, ano mise

### Vocabulary

gaikoku    foreign country  
sētā        sweater

### SHORT DIALOGUE

---

Suzuki: Sumisu-san wa doko ni tsutomete imasu ka.

Sumisu: ABC ni tsutomete imasu.

Suzuki: Jā, Kyōto shisha no Satō-san o shitte imasu ka.

Sumisu: Ee, shitte imasu.

Suzuki: Where do you work, Mr. Smith?

Smith: I work for ABC.

Suzuki: Then, do you know Mr. Satō in the Kyoto branch?

Smith: Yes, I do.

### Vocabulary

Satō    a surname

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Dare to dare ga hanashi o shite imasu ka.
2. Senshū dare ga Amerika kara Nihon ni kimashita ka.
3. Sumisu-san no o-niisan wa ima Tōkyō ni imasu ka.
4. Sumisu-san no o-niisan wa doko ni tsutomete imasu ka.
5. Sumisu-san no o-niisan wa doko ni sunde imasu ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. (       ) de kitte o utte imasu ka.  
Ano mise de utte imasu.
2. Ano hito wa (       ) ni tsutomete imasu ka.  
Depāto ni tsutomete imasu.
3. (       ) ga Hayashi-san no atarashii denwa-bangō o shitte imasu ka.  
Hayashi-san no hisho ga shitte imasu.
4. Howaito-san wa ima (       ) ni itte imasu ka.  
Ginkō ni itte imasu.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Kochira wa Tōkyō Denki (       ) Tanaka-san desu.
2. Tanaka-san wa doko (       ) tsutomete imasu ka.  
Tōkyō Denki (       ) tsutomete imasu.
3. Sumisu-san wa ima Tōkyō (       ) shigoto o shite imasu.
4. Buraun-san wa doko (       ) sunde imasu ka.  
Ueno Eki (       ) chikaku (       ) sunde imasu.
5. Doko (       ) Ei-go (       ) shimbun (       ) utte imasu ka.  
Asoko (       ) utte imasu.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. Do you know Mr. Tanaka?  
No, I don't know (him).
2. I live near (my) office. It's a 15-minute walk.
3. Mr. Smith works for ABC.

LESSON **28** EXPRESSING PREFERENCES

**Mr. Smith wants to buy some antique furniture. He is asking Miss Yamada where to find some.**

スミス：わたしは にほんの ふるい かぐが すきです。せんげつ たんすを かいました。つぎは つくえを かいたいです。いい みせを しっていますか。

やまだ：さあ、しりません。はやしさんは いろいろな ことを よく しっていますから はやしさんに きいてください。

■スミスさんは ふるい かぐが すきです。スミスさんは やまださんに ふるい かぐの みせについて ききました。

**Sumisu: Watashi wa Nihon no furui kagu ga suki desu. Sengetsu tansu o kaimashita. Tsugi wa tsukue o kaitai desu. Ii mise o shitte imasu ka.**

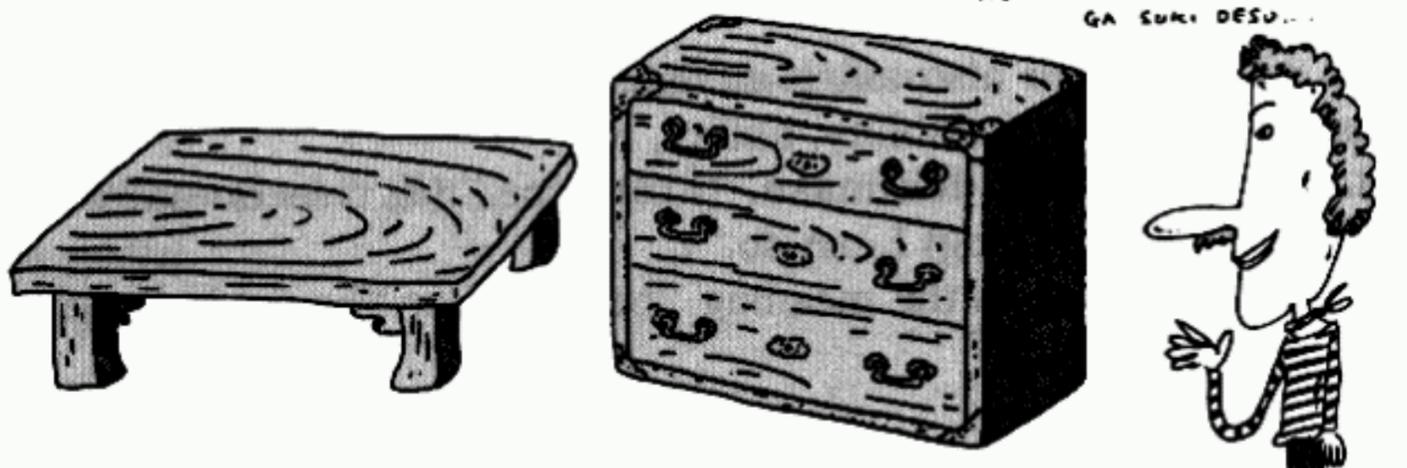
**Yamada: Sā, shirimasen. Hayashi-san wa iroirona koto o yoku shitte imasu kara Hayashi-san ni kiite kudasai.**

■**Sumisu-san wa furui kagu ga suki desu. Sumisu-san wa Yamada-san ni furui kagu no mise ni tsuite kikimashita.**

**Smith: I like antique Japanese furniture. Last month I bought a *tansu*. Next, I want to buy a table. Do you know a good store?**

**Yamada: Let me see . . . No, I don't. Mr. Hayashi knows a lot about various things, so ask him.**

■**Mr. Smith likes antique furniture. Mr. Smith asked Miss Yamada about stores that sell antique furniture.**



## Vocabulary

かぐ	kagu	furniture
たんす	tansu	tansu (chest of drawers)
つくえ	tsukue	table
いろいろな こと	iroirona koto	various things
いろいろな	iroirona	various (-na adj.)
こと	koto	thing
みせに ついて	mise ni tsuite	about stores
~に ついて	ni tsuite	about, concerning

## GRAMMAR X

---

### Desire, Preference, Like and Dislike

1. person WA noun GA SUKI desu
2. person WA noun GA II desu  
(person WA) noun WA noun GA II desu
3. Watashi wa verb -TAI desu

- Particle **ga** is used with **suki desu (-na adj.)**  
**ii desu (-i adj.)**
- In “I like bananas,” “like” is a verb and “bananas” is the object, but in Japanese, “bananas” takes the particle **ga**, and they are described as being “likable,” using an adjective rather than a verb.  
*ex. Banana ga suki desu. “I like bananas.” (lit. “Bananas are likable.”)*  
*Anata ga suki desu. “I love you.” (lit. “You are lovable.”)*
- The same construction is used with the adjective **ii**, “good, preferable,” etc.  
*ex. Kōhī ga ii desu. “I’d like coffee.” (lit. “Coffee is preferable.”)* Note the following constructions, all of which mean “I’d like coffee.”
  1. **Watashi wa kōhī ga ii desu.** “I’d like coffee.” (*lit. “As for me, coffee is preferable.”*)
  2. **Nomimono wa kōhī ga ii desu.** “I’d like coffee.” (*lit. “As for something to drink, coffee is my choice.”*)
  3. **Watashi wa nomimono wa kōhī ga ii desu.** “I’d like coffee.” (*lit. “As for me, regarding something to drink, coffee is my choice.”*)In this last sentence, the speaker first talks about himself, “**watashi**,” then he chooses the category of drinks, “**nomimono**,” and talks about it.
- The verb **wakarimasu** also takes **ga** (see Note 2, p. 104.), as does the verb **dekimasu**, expressing possibility, ability, etc.  
*ex. Watashi wa taipu ga dekimasu. “I can type.” (lit. “As far as I’m concerned, typing (is something) I can do.”)*  
Note: **Dekimasu** also has the meaning “be done” or “be ready.” (See Lesson 21.)

● Verb **-tai desu**

Constructions expressing desire can be made from the **-masu** form as follows:

**iki-masu iki-tai**

**tabe-masu tabe-tai**

The verb **-tai** form is inflected like an **-i** adjective.

*ex.* **Ikitai desu.** “(I) want to go.”

**Ikitakunai desu.** “(I) don’t want to go.”

**Ikitakatta desu.** “(I) wanted to go.”

**Ikitakunakatta desu.** “(I) didn’t want to go.”

● Verb **-tai** expresses the speaker’s desire.

*ex.* **Takushī de ikitai desu.** “(I) want to go by taxi.”

It can be made into a question by adding the question marker **ka**.

But asking a person, especially someone senior, what he wishes to do in this form is often considered not polite, and simple questions are preferable.

*ex.* **Takushī de ikimasu ka.** “Do you (want to) go by taxi?”

This form cannot be used to refer to a third person.

The particle **ga** is sometimes used instead of **o**.

**Suraido o/ga mitai desu.** “(I) want to see the slides.”

## NOTES

---

1. **Shitte imasu**, “(I) know,” always takes the verb **-te** form. The reply is irregular:

*Aa:* **Hai, shitte imasu.** “Yes, (I) know.”

*An:* **Iie, shirimasen.** “No, (I) don’t know.”

2. **Sā, shirimasen.**

**Sā . . .** (“Let me see . . .”) is an expression often used in Japanese when thinking about an answer.

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Tanaka-san wa gorufu ga jōzu desu.**
2. **[Watashi wa] Ringo ga suki desu.**
3. **[Watashi wa] Taipu ga dekimasu.**
4. **[Watashi wa] Atama ga itai desu.**
5. **[Watashi wa] Yōroppa ni ikitai desu.**
6. **[Watashi wa] Ima nani mo tabetakunai desu.**

1. Mr. Tanaka is good at golf.
2. I like apples.
3. I can type.
4. I have a headache.

5. I'd like to go to Europe.  
 6. I don't want to eat anything now.

### Vocabulary

<b>jōzuna</b>	good at (-na adj.)	<b>atama</b>	head
<b>dekimasu</b> ( <b>dekiru</b> )	can (do)	<b>itai</b>	aching (-i adj.)
		<b>Yōroppa</b>	Europe

### EXERCISES

I Memorize the following adjectives and verb.

		Present Form		Past Form	
		<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
<b>-na</b> adj.	skilled in	<b>jōzu desu</b>	<b>jōzu dewa arimasen</b>	<b>jōzu deshita</b>	<b>jōzu dewa arimasen-deshita</b>
	like, love	<b>suki desu</b>	<b>suki dewa arimasen</b>	<b>suki deshita</b>	<b>suki dewa arimasen-deshita</b>
verb	be able to (do)	<b>dekimasu</b>	<b>dekimasen</b>	<b>dekimashita</b>	<b>dekimasen deshita</b>
<b>-i</b> adj.	be painful	<b>itai desu</b>	<b>itakunai desu</b>	<b>itakatta desu</b>	<b>itakunakatta desu</b>

II Practice the following patterns by changing the underlined part as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Tanaka-san wa gorufu ga jōzu desu.

- Doitsu-go
- ryōri

B. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Atama ga itai desu.

- nodo
- onaka
- ha

III Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Kudamono ga suki desu ka.

Aa: Hai, totemo suki desu.

An: Iie, amari suki dewa arimasen.

- eiga
- ryokō
- Haruko-san

B. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Nihon-go ga dekimasu ka.

Aa: Hai, sukoshi dekimasu.

Aa: Iie, zenzen dekimasen.

1. Furansu-go

2. taipu

C. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Atama ga itai desu ka.

Aa: Hai, itai desu.

Aa: Iie, itakunai desu.

1. nodo

2. onaka

3. ha

D. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Donna kudamono ga suki desu ka.

A: Ringo ga suki desu.

1. yasai, tomato

2. ryōri, niku no ryōri

#### IV Memorize the following -tai desu form.

	Present Form		Past Form	
	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>	<i>aff.</i>	<i>neg.</i>
want to go	ikitai desu	ikitakunai desu	ikitakatta desu	ikitakunakatta desu
want to send	okuritai desu	okuritakunai desu	okuritakatta desu	okuritakunakatta desu

#### V Practice the following -tai desu form.

1. eiga ni ikimasu

[Watashi wa] Eiga ni ikitai desu.

ikitakunai desu.

ikitakatta desu.

ikitakunakatta desu.

2. terebi o mimasu

[Watashi wa] Terebi o mitai desu.

mitakunai desu.

mitakatta desu.

mitakunakatta desu.

3. Tanaka-san ni aimasu

[Watashi wa] Tanaka-san ni aitai desu.

aitakunai desu.

aitakatta desu.

aitakunakatta desu.

VI Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

A. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Yama ni ikitai desu.

1. toshokan
2. onsen
3. Kyōto no matsuri

B. *ex.* [Watashi wa] Ima terebi o mitakunai desu.

1. eiga
2. suraido

VII Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Doko ni ikitai desu ka.

A: Yama ni ikitai desu.

1. umi
2. onsen

B. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Nani o kaitai desu ka.

A: Kagu o kaitai desu.

1. nekutai
2. kutsushita
3. tsukue

C. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Ima nani o shitai desu ka.

A: Tenisu o shitai desu.

1. hon o yomimasu
2. eiga ni ikimasu
3. ryokō o shimasu

D. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Nani o shitai desu ka.

A: Nani mo shitakunai desu.

1. tabemasu
2. nomimasu
3. kaimasu

E. *ex.* Q: [Anata wa] Doko ni ikitai desu ka.

A: Doko ni mo ikitakunai desu.

1. dare ni, aimasu

### Vocabulary

Doitsu-go	German language	okuritai	want to send
nodo	throat	okurimasu (okuru)	send
onaka	stomach	yama	mountain
ha	tooth	toshokan	library

kudamono	fruit	onsen	hot spring
Furansu-go	French language	matsuri	festival
tomato	tomato	kutsushita	socks

## SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. **Tanaka:** Kono ryōri wa totemo oishii desu.  
**Howaito:** Sō desu ka. Mō sukoshi ikaga desu ka.  
**Tanaka:** Arigatō gozaimasu. Itadakimasu. Howaito-san wa ryōri ga jōzu desu ne.

Tanaka: This dish is very good.  
White: Is it? Would you like some more?  
Tanaka: Thank you. I'd love some more. You're a good cook.

2. **Isha:** Dō shimashita ka.  
**Yamada:** Kinō kara kibun ga warui desu.  
**Isha:** Netsu ga arimasu ka.  
**Yamada:** Ee, 39-do arimasu. Atama mo itai desu.  
**Isha:** Nodo mo itai desu ka.  
**Yamada:** Hai, itai desu.  
**Isha:** Kusuri o agemasu kara shokuji no ato de nonde kudasai. Dōzo o-daiji ni.

Doctor: What's the matter?  
Yamada: I haven't felt well since yesterday.  
Doctor: Do you have a fever?  
Yamada: Yes. My temperature is 39 degrees (C.). I have a headache.  
Doctor: Do you have a sore throat too?  
Yamada: Yes, I do.  
Doctor: (*After the examination.*) I'll give you some medicine. Take it after meals.  
Look after yourself.

(Note: Parts of the body are given in Appendix F.)

3. **Tanaka:** Tsugi no nichi-yōbi ni nani o shitai desu ka.  
**Hayashi:** Tenisu o shitai desu. Hon mo yomitai desu. Tanaka-san wa nani o shitai desu ka.  
**Tanaka:** [Watashi wa] Eiga ni ikitai desu.

Tanaka: What would you like to do next Sunday?  
Hayashi: I'd like to play tennis. I'd like to read a book, too. What would you like to do?  
Tanaka: I'd like to go to a movie.

4. **Howaito:** Kono nimotsu o Amerika ni okuritai desu. Donogurai kakarimasu ka.  
**Yūbinkyoku no hito:** Kōkūbin desu ka, funabin desu ka.  
**Howaito:** Funabin de onegaishimasu.

**Yūbinkyoku no hito: Sō desu ne. Ikkagetsu gurai kakarimasu.**

White: I'd like to send this parcel to the United States. How long will it take?

Post office clerk: By airmail or sea mail?

White: By sea mail, please.

Post office clerk: Let me see . . . It'll take about one month.

5. **Hayashi: Senshū no nichiyōbi ni haikingu ni ikimashita ka.**

**Tanaka: Iie, ikitakatta desu ga, atama ga itakatta desu kara ikimasen deshita.**

Hayashi: Did you go hiking last week Sunday?

Tanaka: No. I wanted to, but I had a headache, so I didn't go.

### Vocabulary

isha	doctor	nimotsu	parcel
dō shimashita ka	What's the matter?	kōkūbin	airmail
kibun	feeling	funabin	sea mail
netsu	fever	sō desu ne	Let me see . . .
39-do	39 degrees (Centigrade)	ikkagetsu	(for) one month
-do	degree	-kagetsu	month (see Appendix G.)
dōzo o-daiji ni	Look after yourself.		

### QUIZ

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. **Sumisu-san wa donna kagu ga suki desu ka.**
2. **Sumisu-san wa mō tansu o kaimashita ka.**
3. **Yamada-san wa Nihon no furui kagu no ii mise o shitte imasu ka.**
4. **Sumisu-san wa Hayashi-san ni nani ni tsuite kikimasu ka.**

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. **Shūmatsu ni ( ) o shitai desu ka.**  
**Eiga o mitai desu.**
2. **Tsugi no nichiyōbi ni ( ) ni ikitai desu ka.**  
**Doko ni mo ikitakunai desu. Uchi ni itai desu.**
3. **( ) kudamono ga suki desu ka.**  
**Ringo ga suki desu.**
4. **Issho ni shokuji ni ikimasen ka.**  
**Zannen desu ga, [watashi wa] ima ( ) mo tabetakunai desu.**

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Kurāku-san (     ) tenisu (     ) jōzu desu (     ), watashi (     ) jōzu dewa arimasen.
2. Ano hito (     ) Nihon-go (     ) dekimasu. Totemo jōzu desu.
3. Kinō kara nodo (     ) itai desu kara, hiru-yasumi (     ) byōin (     ) ikitai desu.
4. Ima nani (     ) nomitakunai desu.
5. Kyō doko ni (     ) ikitakunai desu. Uchi (     ) itai desu. Uchi (     ) hon (     ) yomitai desu.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. Miss White likes apples.
2. Can you ski?  
Yes, I can.
3. I want to meet a friend tomorrow and play tennis (together).
4. I wanted to write a letter yesterday, but there wasn't time.
5. My throat is sore, so I don't want to eat anything.

---

LESSON **29** DINING OUT

---

**Mr. Tanaka has invited Mr. Brown to a meal. They are in a restaurant looking at the menu and conversing.**

たなか： すみません、メニューを みせてください。

ウェイトレス： はい、どうぞ。

たなか： のみものは なにか いいですか。

ブラウン： ビールが いいです。

たなか： りょうりは すきやきが いいですか、しゃぶしゃぶが いいですか。

ブラウン： すきやきは せんしゅう たべましたから、しゃぶしゃぶが いいです。

たなか： しょくじの あとで コーヒーは いかがですか。

ブラウン： はい、いただきます。

たなか： ビールを 2ほん と しゃぶしゃぶを おねがいします。  
デザートは メロンが いいです。

ウェイトレス： はい、わかりました。

■ たなかさんと ブラウンさんは レストランで しょくじを しました。ビールを のんで、しゃぶしゃぶを たべました。しょくじのあとで コーヒーを のみました。

**Tanaka:** Sumimasen, menyū o misete kudasai.

**Ueitoresu:** Hai, dōzo.

**Tanaka:** Nomimono wa nani ga ii desu ka.

**Buraun:** Biru ga ii desu.

**Tanaka:** Ryōri wa sukiyaki ga ii desu ka, shabushabu ga ii desu ka.

**Buraun:** Sukiyaki wa senshū tabemashita kara, shabushabu ga ii desu.

**Tanaka:** Shokuji no ato de kōhī wa ikaga desu ka.

**Buraun:** Hai, itadakimasu.

**Tanaka:** Biru o 2-hon to shabushabu o onegaishimasu. Dezāto wa meron ga ii desu.

Ueitoresu: Hai, wakarimashita.

■ Tanaka-san to Buraun-san wa resutoran de shokuji o shimashita. Biru o nonde shabushabu o tabemashita. Shokuji no ato de kōhi o nomimashita.

Tanaka: Excuse me, could we see the menu, please? (*lit.* "Please show us the menu.")  
Waitress: Certainly, sir. Here you are.  
Tanaka: What would you like to drink?  
Brown: I'd like some beer.  
Tanaka: As for dinner, would you like sukiyaki or (would you like) *shabushabu*?  
Brown: I had sukiyaki last week, so I'd like *shabushabu*.  
Tanaka: After the meal, how about some coffee?  
Brown: Yes, I'd love some.  
Tanaka: Two bottles of beer and some *shabushabu*, please. For dessert, we'd like some melon.  
Waitress: I see.

■ Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Brown had a meal in a restaurant. They drank beer and ate *shabu-shabu*. After the meal they had coffee.

### Vocabulary

のみもの	nomimono	beverage
すきやき	sukiyaki	sukiyaki
しゃぶしゃぶ	shabushabu	shabushabu
デザート	dezāto	dessert
メロン	meron	melon

### NOTES

---

1. **Nomimono wa nani ga ii desu ka.**

**Biru ga ii desu.**

See Grammar X (p. 174) for replies when a choice is offered.

2. **Ryōri wa sukiyaki ga ii desu ka, shabushabu ga ii desu ka.**

When offering a choice between two possibilities, the key word is replaced and the predicate is repeated. Note the difference between this and the usual English construction.

*ex.* **Kyōto ni ikimasu ka, Ōsaka ni ikimasu ka.** "Are you going to Kyoto or (are you going to) Osaka?"

3. **Sukiyaki wa senshū tabemashita kara**

Although **sukiyaki** is the object, it is also the topic and therefore takes the particle **wa**.

## PRACTICE

---

### KEY SENTENCES

---

1. **Watashi wa jūsu ga ii desu.**
2. **Nomimono wa jūsu ga ii desu.**

1. I'll have fruit juice.
2. (As for something) to drink, I'll have fruit juice.

### EXERCISES

---

I Practice the following pattern by changing the underlined part as in the example given.

*ex.* [Watashi wa] Ryokō wa Kyōto ga ii desu.

1. getsu-yōbi
2. raigetsu
3. onsen

II Make dialogues by changing the underlined parts as in the examples given.

A. *ex.* A: Bīru ga ii desu ka, wain ga ii desu ka.

B: Bīru ga ii desu.

1. kōhī, kōcha
2. niku no ryōri, sakana no ryōri
3. yama, umi
4. do-yōbi, nichī-yōbi

B. *ex.* A: Nomimono wa kōhī ga ii desu ka, kōcha ga ii desu ka.

B: Kōcha ga ii desu.

1. dezāto, o-kashi, kudamono
2. doraibu, konshū, raishū
3. kaigi, 9-ji kara, 10-ji kara

C. *ex.* A: Dezāto wa nani ga ii desu ka.

B: Aisukurimu ga ii desu.

1. ryōri, sukiyaki
2. hiru-gohan, sandoitchi

### Vocabulary

aisukurimu ice cream

### SHORT DIALOGUES

---

1. Hayashi: Ryōri wa niku ga ii desu ka, sakana ga ii desu ka.  
Howaito: Niku ga ii desu.

**Hayashi:** Dewa, sukiyaki wa ikaga desu ka.

**Howaito:** Ee, sukiyaki o onegaishimasu.

**Hayashi:** (As for the meal) Would you like meat or fish?

**White:** I'd like meat.

**Hayashi:** Then how about sukiyaki?

**White:** Yes, sukiyaki please.

2. **Tanaka:** Shokuji wa nan-ji goro ga ii desu ka.

**Howaito:** 6-ji ga ii desu.

**Tanaka:** Dewa, shokuji no mae ni niwa de shashin o torimasen ka.

**Howaito:** Ee, torimashō.

**Tanaka:** What time would you like to eat? (*lit.* "What time would you like the meal?")

**White:** Six o'clock would be nice.

**Tanaka:** Well then, wouldn't you like to take some pictures in the garden before dinner?

**White:** Yes, let's take some.

3. **Hayashi:** Shūmatsu ni doraibu ni ikimasen ka.

**Howaito:** Ee, ii desu ne.

**Hayashi:** Do-yōbi ga ii desu ka, nichiyōbi ga ii desu ka.

**Howaito:** Do-yōbi ga ii desu.

**Hayashi:** Doko ni ikimashō ka. Umi wa dō desu ka.

**Howaito:** Ee, watashi wa umi ga suki desu. Umi ni ikitai desu.

**Hayashi:** Wouldn't you (like to) go for a drive this weekend?

**White:** Yes. How nice.

**Hayashi:** Would you like to go on Saturday or (would you prefer) Sunday?

**White:** Saturday would be fine.

**Hayashi:** Where shall we go? What about the seaside?

**White:** Yes. I like the sea. I'd like to go to the seaside.

## QUIZ ■■■■■

I Read this lesson's opening dialogue and answer the following questions.

1. Tanaka-san to Buraun-san wa ima doko ni imasu ka.
2. Tanaka-san to Buraun-san wa nani o nomimasu ka.
3. Tanaka-san to Buraun-san wa sukiyaki o tabemasu ka, shabushabu o tabemasu ka.

II Complete the questions so that they fit the answers.

1. Nomimono wa ( ) ga ii desu ka.  
Kōhī ga ii desu.

2. Ryōri wa sakana ga ii desu ka, (        ) ga ii desu ka.  
Niku ga ii desu.
3. Shokuji wa (        ) kara ga ii desu ka.  
11-ji kara ga ii desu.
4. Ryokō wa (        ) ga ii desu ka.  
Kyōto ga ii desu.

III Put the appropriate particles in the parentheses. (If a particle is not required, put an X in the parentheses.)

1. Raigetsu no yasumi ni Kyōto (        ) ikitai desu. Anata (        )?  
Watashi (        ) Ōsaka (        ) ii desu.
2. Dezāto (        ) kudamono (        ) ii desu (        ), aisukurimu (        ) ii desu (        ).  
Aisukurimu (        ) ii desu.
3. Shokuji (        ) ato de, kudamono (        ) onegaishimasu.
4. Kaigi (        ) mae (        ), watashi (        ) heya (        ) kite kudasai.

IV Translate into Japanese.

1. What would you like for dessert?  
Some fruit, please.
2. I wanted to drink some coffee before the meeting, but there wasn't time, so I drank some after the meeting.

---

# LESSON 30 READING REVIEW

---

■ ブラウンさんと おくさんは アメリカで にほんごの べんきょう  
を していました。そして きょう ブラウンさんは アメリカの  
さとうせんせいに にほんごで てがみを かきました。

さとうせんせい、おげんきですか。

とうきょうは とても あついですが、わたしたちは げんきです。  
わたしは、まいにち ちかてつで かいしゃに いきます。うちから  
かいしゃまで 20ぶんぐらいです。とうきょうの ちかてつは べんり  
ですが、あさ 8じころから 9じころまでと ごご 5じころから 6じは  
んごろまで、とても こんでいます。しゅうまつには ドライブを  
したいですが、わたしたちは くるまが ありませんから、でんしゃで  
おもしろい ところに いきます。

しごとは とても いそがしいです。せんしゅう おおさかと  
きょうとの ししゃに きました。きょうとの かいぎの あとで  
ちいさい おてらに きました。しずかでした。にわが きれい  
でした。ほかの おてらも みたかったですが、じかんが ありません  
でした。ざんねんでした。

かないは にほんじんの ともだちや アメリカじんの ともだちと  
ちいさい べんきょうの グループを つくりました。グループの  
ひとは まいつき 15にちに あって、にほんと アメリカの  
しゃかいや ぶんかや かんがえかたや けいざいや せいじについて  
はなしを します。

かないは じかんが ありますから、いろいろな べんきょうを  
しています。そして にほんじんの ともだちが たくさん あります。  
かないは にほんごが じょうずです。かんじも よみます。さいきん  
かないは まいあさ にほんごの べんきょうを しています。わたし  
は かようびにだけ にほんごの べんきょうを しています。

らいげつから きんようびにも したいです。いまの テキストは  
もうすぐ おわりますから、らいげつから あたらしいのを つかいま  
す。わたしは あたらしい テキストを たのしみに しています。  
では また てがみを かきます。  
みなさまに どうぞ よろしく。おげんきで。さようなら。

8がつ いつか

ジョン・ブラウン

- **Buraun-san to okusan wa Amerika de Nihon-go no benkyō o shite imashita. Soshite kyō Buraun-san wa Amerika no Satō-sensei ni Nihon-go de tegami o kakimashita.**

Satō-sensei, o-genki desu ka.

Tōkyō wa totemo atsui desu ga, watashi-tachi wa genki desu. Watashi wa mainichi chikatetsu de kaisha ni ikimasu. Uchi kara kaisha made 20-pun gurai desu. Tōkyō no chikatetsu wa benri desu ga, asa 8-ji goro kara 9-ji goro made to gogo 5-ji goro kara 6-ji han goro made, totemo konde imasu. Shūmatsu ni wa doraibu o shitai desu ga, watashi-tachi wa kuruma ga arimasen kara, densha de omoshiroi tokoro ni ikimasu.

Shigoto wa totemo isogashii desu. Senshū Ōsaka to Kyōto no shisha ni ikimashita. Kyōto no kaigi no ato de chiisai o-tera ni ikimashita. Shizuka deshita. Niwa ga kirei deshita. Hoka no o-tera mo mitakatta desu ga, jikan ga arimasendeshita. Zannen deshita.

Kanai wa Nihon-jin no tomodachi ya Amerika-jin no tomodachi to chiisai benkyō no gurūpu o tsukurimashita. Gurupu no hito wa maitzuki 15-nichi ni atte, Nihon to Amerika no shakai ya bunka ya kangaekata ya keizai ya seiji ni tsuite hanashi o shimasu.

Kanai wa jikan ga arimasu kara, iroirona benkyō o shite imasu. Soshite Nihon-jin no tomodachi ga takusan arimasu. Kanai wa Nihon-go ga jōzu desu. Kanji mo yomimasu. Saikin kanai wa maiasa Nihon-go no benkyō o shite imasu. Watashi wa ka-yōbi ni dake Nihon-go no benkyō o shite imasu. Raigetsu kara kin-yōbi ni mo shitai desu. Ima no tekisuto wa mō sugu owarimasu kara, raigetsu kara atarashii no o tsukaimasu. Watashi wa atarashii tekisuto o tanoshimi ni shite imasu.

Dewa mata tegami o kakimasu.

Mina-sama ni dōzo yoroshiku. O-genki de. Sayōnara.

8-gatsu itsuka

Jon Buraun

- Mr. and Mrs. Brown studied Japanese in America. And today Mr. Brown wrote a letter in Japanese to their teacher in America, Satō Sensei.

Dear Satō Sensei,

How are you? It is very hot in Tokyo, but we are well.

I go to my office every day by subway. It takes (*lit. is*) about 20 minutes from my house to the office. Tokyo subways are convenient, but they are very crowded from about 8:00 in the morning till about 9:00 and from about 5:00 in the afternoon till about 6:30. On weekends, we'd like to go driving, but since we don't have a car, we visit interesting places by train.

I'm very busy with work. I visited our Osaka and Kyoto branches last week. After a meeting in Kyoto I went to a small temple. It was quiet, and the garden was beautiful. I wanted to see other temples but, sorry to say, did not have time.

My wife has formed a small study group with Japanese and American friends. The people in the group meet on the 15 of each month and talk about Japanese and American community life and social conditions, culture, ways of thinking, economy, politics, etc.

My wife has time, so she is studying various things. And she has many Japanese friends. My wife's Japanese is good. She reads *kanji*, too. Nowadays my wife has a Japanese lesson every morning. I have a Japanese lesson only on Tuesday. From next month, I want to have one on Friday, too. I'll soon finish my present textbook, so I will use a new one from next month. I am looking forward to the new textbook. I'll write a letter again (soon).

Please give my best regards to everyone. Take care of yourself.

Good-bye,

August 5

John Brown

### Vocabulary

さとうせんせい せんせい	Satō-sensei sensei	Professor Satō (term of respect for professors, doctors, lawyers, etc.)
こんで います こみます (こむ)	konde imasu komimasu (komu)	be crowded be crowded
ところ	tokoro	place
ほか	hoka	other
グループ	gurūpu	group
つくりました つくります (つくる)	tsukurimashita tsukurimasu (tsukuru)	formed form
まいつき	maitzuki	every month
しゃかい	shakai	society, social conditions
ぶんか	bunka	culture
かんがえかた	kangaekata	way of thinking
けいざい	keizai	economy
せいじ	seiji	politics

さいきん	<b>saikin</b>	nowadays
テキスト	<b>tekisuto</b>	text
もう すぐ	<b>mō sugu</b>	very soon
おわります (おわる)	<b>owarimasu (owaru)</b>	finish
あたらしいの	<b>atarashii no</b>	new one
の	<b>no</b>	one
たのしみに して います	<b>tanoshimi ni shite imasu</b>	be looking forward to
みなさまに どうぞ よろしく	<b>mina-sama ni dōzo yoroshiku</b>	Best regards to everyone.
みなさま	<b>mina-sama</b>	everyone (politer than <b>minna-san</b> )
~に よろしく	<b>ni yoroshiku</b>	Best regards to . . .
おげんきで	<b>o-genki de</b>	Take care of yourself. ( <i>lit.</i> “(Keep) well.”)
ジョン	<b>Jon</b>	John

# APPENDICES

## A. Particles

Particles	Examples	Lesson
<b>wa</b>	1. <b>Watashi wa</b> Sumisu desu.	1
	2. <b>Hayashi-san wa</b> Kyōto ni ikimasu.	6
	3. <b>Ōsaka ni wa</b> ikimasen.	6
	4. <b>Kinō wa</b> Sumisu-san no uchi ni ikimashita.	11
	5. <b>Sukiyaki wa</b> senshū tabemashita.	29
<b>no</b>	1. <b>Tōkyō Denki no</b> Tanaka desu.	1
	2. <b>Watashi no</b> meishi desu.	2
	3. <b>Watashi no</b> desu.	2
	4. <b>Atarashii no</b> o tsukaimasu.	30
	5. <b>Nihon no</b> kuruma desu.	5
	6. <b>100-en no</b> kitte o kudasai.	5
	7. <b>Kyōto no</b> shisha ni ikimashita.	6
	8. <b>Tēburu no</b> ue ni hana to shimbun ga arimasu.	8
	9. <b>Kyonen no</b> 5-gatsu 18-nichi ni ikimashita.	7
	10. <b>Shokuji no</b> ato de shimbun o yomimasu.	19
	11. <b>Tsugi no</b> shingō o migi ni magatte kudasai.	20
	12. <b>Tomodachi no</b> Kurāku-san ni moraimashita.	15
	13. <b>Watashi no</b> sukina iro desu.	15
<b>ka</b>	1. <b>Sumisu-san desu ka.</b>	1
	2. <b>Bengoshi desu ka, kaishain desu ka.</b>	1
	3. <b>Donata desu ka.</b>	1
	4. <b>Sō desu ka.</b>	12
<b>kara</b>	1. <b>10-ji kara</b> desu.	3
	2. <b>10-ji kara 6-ji made</b> desu.	3
	3. <b>Amerika kara</b> kimashita.	6
	4. <b>Tōkyō eki kara</b> Azabu made 30-pun kakarimashita.	22
	5. <b>Kyō wa do-yōbi desu kara, byōin wa 12-ji made</b> desu.	9
<b>made</b>	1. <b>6-ji made</b> desu.	3
	2. <b>10-ji kara 6-ji made</b> desu.	3
	3. <b>Byōin made 5-fun gurai</b> arukimashita.	22
	4. <b>Tōkyō eki kara Azabu made 30-pun</b> kakarimashita.	22
<b>o</b>	1. <b>Sore o</b> kudasai.	4
	2. <b>Kabuki o</b> mimasu.	10

	3. Nihongo no benkyō <u>o</u> shimasu.	10
	4. Tsugi no shingō <u>o</u> migi ni magatte kudasai.	21
	5. Hikōki wa nanji ni Ōsaka <u>o</u> demasu ka.	22
mo	1. Kore <u>mo</u> 3,000-en desu.	4
	2. Ōsaka ni <u>mo</u> ikimasu ka.	6
	3. Hon <u>mo</u> yomitai desu.	28
	4. Dare <u>mo</u> imasen.	8
de	1. Hitori <u>de</u> ikimasu.	6
	2. 5,000-en <u>de</u> onegaishimasu.	21
	3. Takushi <u>de</u> kimashita.	7
	4. Ginza no pureigaido <u>de</u> kaimashita.	10
	5. Taishikan <u>de</u> pāti ga arimasu.	18
	6. Shigoto no ato <u>de</u> tomodachi to shokuji o shimashita.	19
to	1. Kaisha no hito <u>to</u> ikimasu.	6
	2. Tēburu no ue ni hana <u>to</u> shimbun ga arimasu.	8
ga	1. Dono densha <u>ga</u> ikimasu ka.	6
	2. Tomodachi no Rinda-san <u>ga</u> kimashita.	19
	3. Ikkai ni ima <u>ga</u> arimasu.	8
	4. Maiasa kōhi o nomimasu <u>ga</u> , nani mo tabemasen.	11
	5. Katō desu <u>ga</u> , go-shujin wa irasshaimasu ka.	12
ni	1. Ōsaka no shisha <u>ni/e</u> ikimasu.	6
	2. Sumisu-san wa gogo 3-ji <u>ni</u> kūkō <u>ni</u> tsukimashita.	22
	3. Nichi-yōbi <u>ni</u> ikimashita.	7
	4. Ima <u>ni</u> isu ya tēburu ga arimasu.	8
	5. Bengoshi <u>ni</u> aimasu.	12
	6. Tomodachi <u>ni</u> tegami o kakimasu.	12
	7. Kurāku-san wa Tanaka-san <u>ni</u> kabin o agemashita.	15
	8. Tanaka-san wa Kurāku-san <u>ni/kara</u> kabin o moraimashita.	15
	9. Nikkō <u>ni/e</u> sukī ni ikimasu.	16
	10. Ryokō-gaisha <u>ni</u> tsutomete imasu.	27
	11. Nyū Yōku <u>ni</u> sunde imasu.	27
ya	1. Ima ni isu <u>ya</u> tēburu ga arimasu.	8
ne	1. Asoko ni uketsuke ga arimasu <u>ne</u> .	8
yo	1. Ee, arimasu <u>yo</u> .	9

made ni	1. 3-ji <u>made ni</u> todokete kudasai.	20
. . . wa . . . ga	1. Watashi <u>wa</u> eiga no kippu <u>ga</u> 2-mai arimasu.	18
	2. Watashi <u>wa</u> taipu <u>ga</u> dekimasu.	28
	3. Sumisu-san <u>wa</u> Nihon no furui kagu <u>ga</u> suki desu.	28
	4. Watashi <u>wa</u> atama <u>ga</u> itai desu.	28
	5. Watashi <u>wa</u> suraido o/ <u>ga</u> mitai desu.	28
	6. Watashi <u>wa</u> jūsu <u>ga</u> ii desu.	29
	7. (Watashi <u>wa</u> ) nomimono <u>wa</u> biru <u>ga</u> ii desu.	29

## B. Interrogatives

Interrogatives	Examples	Lesson
donata/dare	Kochira wa <u>donata/dare</u> desu ka.	1, 5
donata/dare no	Kore wa <u>donata/dare</u> no hon desu ka.	2
dare to	Sumisu-san wa <u>dare to</u> Narita Kūkō ni ikimasu ka.	6
dare ga	<u>Dare ga</u> kyō taishikan ni ikimasu ka.	6
	Niwa ni <u>dare ga</u> imasu ka.	8
dare ni	<u>Dare ni</u> denwa o shimasu ka.	12
	<u>Dare ni</u> aimasu ka.	12
nan	Kore wa <u>nan</u> desu ka.	2
nan-ji	Ima <u>nan-ji</u> desu ka.	3
nan de	Sumisu-san wa Tanaka-san no uchi ni <u>nan de</u> ikimashita ka.	7
	Sumisu-san wa <u>nan de</u> Ei-go no setsumei o kikimashita ka.	14
nani ga	Ima ni <u>nani ga</u> arimasu ka.	8
	Konban taishikan de <u>nani ga</u> arimasu ka.	18
	Ryōri wa <u>nani ga</u> ii desu ka.	29
nani o	Shūmatsu ni <u>nani o</u> shimasu ka.	10
itsu	Tanjōbi wa <u>itsu</u> desu ka.	3
	<u>Itsu</u> Nihon ni kimashita ka.	6
itsu ga	Kaigi wa <u>itsu ga</u> ii desu ka.	29
ikura	Sore wa <u>ikura</u> desu ka.	4
ikutsu	Tēburu no ue ni ringo ga <u>ikutsu</u> arimasu ka.	9
doko	Basu noriba wa <u>doko</u> desu ka.	9
doko no	Kore wa <u>doko no</u> kamera desu ka.	9
doko ni	Tanaka-san wa kinō <u>doko ni</u> ikimashita ka.	6
	Tanaka-san wa <u>doko ni</u> imasu ka.	9
	Kuruma no kagi wa <u>doko ni</u> arimasu ka.	9
	<u>Doko ni</u> denwa o shimasu ka.	12
	Sumisu-san no o-niisan wa <u>doko ni</u> sunde imasu ka.	27
doko de	Kyō <u>doko de</u> hiru-gohan o tabemasu ka.	10
	Pāti wa <u>doko de</u> arimasu ka.	18
doko ga	Resutoran wa <u>doko ga</u> ii desu ka.	29

dono	<u>Dono</u> densha ga ikimasu ka.	6
dore	Ano kasa wa ikura desu ka. <u>Dore</u> desu ka.	5
dōshite	<u>Dōshite</u> Sumisu-san wa kūkō ni ikimasu ka.	9
donna	Tōkyō Hoteru wa <u>donna</u> hoteru desu ka. <u>Donna</u> kagu ga suki desu ka.	13 28
ikaga/dō	Kabuki wa <u>ikaga/dō</u> deshita ka. <u>Dō</u> shimashita ka.	13, 14 28
donogurai	Do-yōbi ni <u>donogurai</u> shigoto o shimasu ka. <u>Donogurai</u> kakarimasu ka.	19 22
dōyatte	<u>Dōyatte</u> Tōkyō Byōin ni ikimashita ka.	22

### C. Sentence Patterns

Sentence patterns	Sample Sentences	Lesson
1. . . . wa . . . . desu	1. Watashi wa Tanaka desu. 2. Kore wa kaisha no denwa-bangō desu. 3. Ginkō wa 9-ji kara 3-ji made desu. 4. Kono ringo wa totemo oishii desu. 5. Kyō wa ii tenki desu ne. 6. Kabuki wa totemo omoshirokatta desu.	1 2 3 13 13 14
2. . . . wa . . . . ga . . . . desu	1. Watashi wa ringo ga suki desu. 2. Watashi wa atama ga itai desu. 3. Nomimono wa jūsu ga ii desu. 4. Watashi wa sui-yōbi ga ii desu.	28 28 29 29
3. -tai desu	1. Nihon no furui kagu o kaitai desu.	28
4. . . . ni . . . . ga arimasu/imasu	1. Ikkai ni ima ga arimasu. 2. Niwa ni Tanaka-san ga imasu.	8 8
5. . . . wa . . . . ni arimasu/imasu	1. Tanaka-san wa tonari no heya ni imasu. 2. Takushi noriba wa eki no mae ni arimasu.	9 9
6. . . . o onegaishimasu	1. Sandoitchi to sarada o onegaishimasu.	20
7. . . . o kudasai	1. Kore o kudasai. 2. 100-en no kitte o 10-mai kudasai.	4 5
8. . . . ni/e -masu	1. Watashi wa ashita ginkō ni ikimasu.	6

9. . . . de . . . o -masu	1. Watashi wa raishū Ginza de kabuki o mimasu.	10
10. . . . ni . . . o -masu	1. Watashi wa tomodachi ni tegami o kakimasu.	12
	2. Sumisu-san wa Hayashi-san ni hon o moraimashita.	15
11. . . . wa . . . ga -masu	1. Watashi wa eiga no kippu ga 2-mai arimasu.	18
	2. Watashi wa taipu ga dekimasu.	28
12. . . . de . . . ga arimasu	1. Do-yōbi ni taishikan de pāti ga arimasu.	18
13. . . . ni -masu	1. Watashi wa 9-ji ni kaisha ni tsukimasu.	22
14. . . . o -masu	1. Watashi wa 5-ji ni kaisha o demasu.	22
15. -masen ka	1. Issho ni sukī ni ikimasen ka.	16
	2. Raishū no do-yōbi ni uchi ni kimasen ka.	17
16. -mashō ka	1. Nanji ni aimashō ka.	16
	2. Chizu o kakimashō ka.	17
17. -te, -masu	1. Watashi wa kinō shigoto no ato de, shokujji o shite, 9-ji goro uchi ni kaerimashita.	19
18. -te imasu	1. Yamada-san wa ima denwa o shite imasu.	25
	2. Kurāku-san wa Tōkyō ni sunde imasu.	27
	3. Watashi wa Tanaka-san o yoku shitte imasu.	27
19. -te kudasai	1. Chotto matte kudasai.	20
20. -te mo ii desu ka	1. Kono heya o tsukatte mo ii desu ka.	23
21. -naide kudasai	1. Koko de tabako o suwanaide kudasai.	24

#### D. Adjectives

Included in the following list of adjectives are some which do not appear in the text.

##### -i adjectives

abunai, dangerous  
 akarui, bright  
 amai, sweet

karai, hot, spicy  
 karui, light  
 kitanai, dirty

semai, narrow  
 shiokarai, salty  
 sukunai, few, a little

<b>atarashii</b> , new, fresh	<b>kurai</b> , dark	<b>suppai</b> , sour
<b>atatakai</b> , warm		<b>suzushii</b> , cool
<b>atsui</b> , hot	<b>mijikai</b> , short	
	<b>muzukashii</b> , difficult	<b>tadashii</b> , correct
<b>chiisai</b> , small		<b>takai</b> , high, expensive
<b>chikai</b> , near	<b>nagai</b> , long	<b>tanoshii</b> , pleasant
		<b>tōi</b> , far
<b>furui</b> , old	<b>ōi</b> , many, much	<b>tsumaranai</b> , boring
	<b>oishii</b> , delicious	<b>tsumetai</b> , cold
<b>hayai</b> , fast, early	<b>ōkii</b> , large	
<b>hikui</b> , low	<b>omoi</b> , heavy	<b>wakai</b> , young
<b>hiroi</b> , wide	<b>omoshiroi</b> ,	<b>warui</b> , bad
	interesting	
<b>ii</b> , good	<b>osoi</b> , slow, late	<b>yasashii</b> , easy
<b>isogashii</b> , busy		<b>yasui</b> , cheap
<b>itai</b> , painful	<b>samui</b> , cold	

**-na adjectives**

<b>anzenna</b> , safe	<b>hetana</b> , unskillful	<b>shinsetsuna</b> , kind
	<b>himana</b> , free	<b>shitsureina</b> , rude
<b>benrina</b> , convenient		<b>shizukana</b> , quiet
	<b>iroirona</b> , various	<b>sukina</b> , likeable
<b>daijina</b> , important		
<b>damena</b> , no good	<b>jōzuna</b> , skillful	<b>teineina</b> , polite
<b>fubenna</b> , inconvenient	<b>kiraina</b> , unlikeable	<b>yūmeina</b> , famous
<b>fushinsetsuna</b> , unkind	<b>kireina</b> , clean, pretty	
<b>genkina</b> , well, healthy	<b>nigiyakana</b> , lively	

**Color words**

<b>akai</b> , red	<b>kuroi</b> , black
<b>aoi</b> , green, blue	
	<b>midori no</b> ,* green
<b>chairoi</b> , <b>chairo no</b> ,* brown	<b>murasaki no</b> ,* purple
<b>kiroi</b> , <b>kiro no</b> ,* yellow	
	<b>shiroi</b> , white

\*Note that these words are nouns and are followed by the particle **no**.

**E. Verb Conjugation**

The following are the **-masu**, **-te**, **-nai**, plain dictionary and **-ta** forms of Regular I, Regular II and Irregular verbs. (See also Model Verb Conjugation in Lesson 19.)

Regular I					
-masu	-te	-nai	dictionary	-ta	
aimasu	atte	awanai	au	atta	meet
arimasu	atte	nai	aru	atta	be, have
arukimasu	aruite	arukanai	aruku	aruita	walk
chigaimasu	chigatte	chigawanai	chigau	chigatta	be wrong
gambarimasu	gambatte	gambaranai	gambaru	gambatta	do one's best
hairimasu	haitte	hairanai	hairu	haitta	enter
iimasu	itte	iwanai	iu	itta	say
ikimasu	itte	ikanai	iku	itta	go
irasshaimasu	irasshatte	irassharanai	irassharu	irasshatta	go, be
itadakimasu	itadaite	itadakanai	itadaku	itadaita	accept
kaerimasu	kaette	kaeranai	kaeru	kaetta	return
kaimasu	katta	kawanai	kau	katta	buy
kakarimasu	kakatte	kakaranai	kakaru	kakatta	(it) takes
kakimasu	kaite	kakanai	kaku	kaita	write
keshimasu	keshite	kesanai	kesu	keshita	turn off
kikimasu	kiite	kikanai	kiku	kiita	listen
komimasu	konde	komanai	komu	konda	be crowded
machimasu	matte	matanai	matsu	matta	wait
magarimasu	magatte	magaranai	magaru	magatta	turn
mochimasu	motte	motanai	motsu	motta	have, hold
moraimasu	moratte	morawanai	morau	moratte	receive
nomimasu	nonde	nomanai	nomu	nonda	drink
norimasu	notte	noranai	noru	notta	ride, get on
okurimasu	okutte	okuranai	okuru	okutta	send
oshimasu	oshite	osanai	osu	oshita	push
owarimasu	owatte	owaranai	owaru	owatta	finish
shitteimasu	shitte	shiranai	shiru	shitta	know
suimasu	sutte	suwarai	suu	sutta	smoke (cigarettes)
sumimasu	sunde	sumanai	sumu	sunda	live
torimasu	totte	toranai	toru	totta	take (a picture)

tsukaimasu	tsukatte	tsukawanai	tsukau	tsukatta	use
tsukimasu	tsuite	tsukanai	tsuku	tsuita	arrive
tsukurimasu	tsukutte	tsukuranai	tsukuru	tsukutta	make
urimasu	utte	uranai	uru	utta	sell
wakarimasu	wakatte	wakaranai	wakaru	wakatta	understand
yomimasu	yonde	yomanai	yomu	yonda	read

Regular II					
-masu	-te	-nai	dictionary	-ta	
agemasu	agete	agenai	ageru	ageta	give
akemasu	akete	akenai	akeru	aketa	open
dekimasu	dekite	dekinai	dekiru	dekita	be able
demasu	dete	denai	deru	deta	leave
imasu	ite	inai	iru	ita	be
kakemasu	kakete	kakenai	kakeru	kaketa	sit down
mimasu	mite	minai	miru	mita	see
misemasu	misete	misenai	miseru	miseta	show
orimasu	orite	orinai	oriru	orita	get off
oshiemasu	oshiete	oshienai	oshieru	oshieta	tell
shimemasu	shimete	shimenai	shimeru	shimeta	close
tabemasu	tabete	tabenai	taberu	tabeta	eat
todokemasu	todokete	todokenai	todokeru	todoketa	deliver
tomemasu	tomete	tomenai	tomeru	tometa	stop, park
tsukemasu	tsukete	tsukenai	tsukeru	tsuketa	turn on
(ki o) tsukemasu	tsukete	tsukenai	tsukeru	tsuketa	be careful
tsutomemasu	tsutomete	tsutomenai	tsutomeru	tsutometa	work for

Irregular					
-masu	-te	-nai	dictionary	-ta	
kimasu	kite	konai	kuru	kita	come
mottekimasu	mottekite	mottekonai	mottekuru	mottekita	bring

shimasu	shite	shinai	suru	shita	do
onagai- shimasu	onegaishite	onegaishinai	onegaिसuru	onegaishita	beg a favor
shitsurei- shimasu	shitsureishite	shitsurei- shinai	shitsureिसuru	shitsureishita	be rude
(benkyō o) shimasu	shite	shinai	suru	shita	study

The following is a selection of compounds that are formed with **suru** and are conjugated in the same way as **benkyō o shimasu**.

**denwa o shimasu**, telephone

**doraibu o shimasu**, go for a drive/  
driving

**gorufu o shimasu**, play golf

**hanashi o shimasu**, talk

**kaigi o shimasu**, have a meeting

**kaimono o shimasu**, shop

**kopī o shimasu**, make a copy

**kurīningu o shimasu**, dry clean

**pāti o shimasu**, give a party

**ryokō o shimasu**, take a trip

**setsumei o shimasu**, explain

**shigoto o shimasu**, work

**shōkai o shimasu**, introduce

**shutchō o shimasu**, go on a business trip

**sōbetsukai o shimasu**, give a farewell party

**sukī o shimasu**, ski

**taipu o shimasu**, type

**tenisu o shimasu**, play tennis

**unten o shimasu**, drive

**yoyaku o shimasu**, make a reservation

## F. Ko-so-a-do

	ko- words	so- words	a- words	do- words
direction	<b>kochira</b> here, this way	<b>sochira</b> there, that way	<b>achira</b> over there	<b>dochira</b> where
people	<b>kochira</b> this person	<b>sochira</b> that person	<b>achira</b> that person over there	<b>donata, dare</b> who
thing	<b>kore</b> this	<b>sore</b> that	<b>are</b> that over there	<b>dore</b> which
place	<b>koko</b> here	<b>soko</b> there	<b>asoko</b> over there	<b>doko</b> where
demonstrative	<b>kono kamera</b> this camera	<b>sono kamera</b> that camera	<b>ano kamera</b> that camera over there	<b>dono kamera</b> which camera

## G. Country, Nationality, Language

	Country	Nationality	Language
Australia	Ōsutoraria	Ōsutoraria-jin	Ei-go
Brazil	Burajiru	Burajiru-jin	Porutogaru-go
Canada	Kanada	Kanada-jin	Ei-go/Furansu-go
China	Chūgoku	Chūgoku-jin	Chūgoku-go
Egypt	Ejiputo	Ejiputo-jin	Arabia-go
France	Furansu	Furansu-jin	Furansu-go
Germany	Doitsu	Doitsu-jin	Doitsu-go
Indonesia	Indoneshia	Indoneshia-jin	Indoneshia-go
Italy	Itaria	Itaria-jin	Itaria-go
Japan	Nihon	Nihon-jin	Nihon-go
New Zealand	Nyūjirando	Nyūjirando-jin	Ei-go
Russia	Roshia	Roshia-jin	Roshia-go
Spain	Supein	Supein-jin	Supein-go
Switzerland	Suisu	Suisu-jin	Doitsu-go/Furansu-go/ Itaria-go
Thailand	Tai	Tai-jin	Tai-go
United Kingdom	Igirisu	Igirisu-jin	Ei-go
United States	Amerika	Amerika-jin	Ei-go

The question words are: **Doko no kuni**, belonging to or coming from "What country." (This is often shortened to **doko?**) **Nani-go**, "What language," and **nani-jin**, "What nationality."

## H. Common Japanese Names (Source: Nippon Univac Kaisha, Ltd., 1975.)

Family Names	Male Given Names	Female Given Names
1. Katō	1. Hiroshi	1. Yoshiko
2. Suzuki	2. Toshio	2. Keiko
3. Watanabe	3. Yoshio	3. Kazuko
4. Tanaka	4. Kazuo	4. Hiroko
5. Itō	5. Akira	5. Yōko

## I. Counters

The abstract numbers (**ichi**, **ni**, **san**) are given on p. 28 (0–20), p. 33 (20, 30, . . .) and p. 41 (100, 200, . . .). The **hitotsu**, **futatsu**, **mittsu** system is given on p. 48. Two counters (**-mai** and **-hon**) appear on p. 45. Below are other counters used in this book.

- Floors of a house or building: **-kai**. Which/how many floors, **nan-kai/nan-gai**.

<b>ikkai</b> , 1st floor	<b>go-kai</b> , 5th floor	<b>kyū-kai</b> , 9th floor
<b>ni-kai</b> , 2nd floor	<b>rokkai</b> , 6th floor	<b>jukkai</b> , 10th floor
<b>san-gai</b> , 3rd floor	<b>nana-kai</b> , 7th floor	<b>jūikkai</b> , 11th floor
<b>yon-kai</b> , 4th floor	<b>hachi-kai</b> , 8th floor	<b>jūni-kai</b> , 12th floor

*Also: chika ikkai*, (1st) basement, *chika ni-kai*, 2nd basement, etc.

2. Liquid measure (cupful, glassful): **-hai, -bai, -pai**. How many, **nam-bai**.
- |                            |                             |                              |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>ippai</b> , 1 cupful    | <b>go-hai</b> , 5 cupfuls   | <b>kyū-hai</b> , 9 cupfuls   |
| <b>ni-hai</b> , 2 cupfuls  | <b>roppai</b> , 6 cupfuls   | <b>juppai</b> , 10 cupfuls   |
| <b>san-bai</b> , 3 cupfuls | <b>nana-hai</b> , 7 cupfuls | <b>jūippai</b> , 11 cupfuls  |
| <b>yon-hai</b> , 4 cupfuls | <b>happai</b> , 8 cupfuls   | <b>jūni-hai</b> , 12 cupfuls |
3. People: **-nin**. How many people, **nan-nin**.
- |                           |                              |                               |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>hitori</b> , 1 person  | <b>roku-nin</b> , 6 people   | <b>ku-nin</b> , 9 people      |
| <b>futari</b> , 2 people  | <b>shichi-nin</b> , 7 people | <b>jū-nin</b> , 10 people     |
| <b>san-nin</b> , 3 people | <b>nana-nin</b> , " "        | <b>jūichi-nin</b> , 11 people |
| <b>yo-nin</b> , 4 people  | <b>hachi-nin</b> , 8 people  | <b>jūni-nin</b> , 12 people   |
| <b>go-nin</b> , 5 people  | <b>kyū-nin</b> , 9 people    |                               |
4. Times: **-kai, -do**. Generally speaking, these two counters may be used interchangeably. How many times, **nan-kai**. How many times/degrees, **nan-do**.
- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>ikkai</b> , <b>ichi-do</b> , once | <b>nana-kai, nana-do</b> , 7 times   |
| <b>ni-kai, ni-do</b> , twice         | <b>hachi-kai, hachi-do</b> , 8 times |
| <b>san-kai, san-do</b> , 3 times     | <b>kyū-kai, kyū-do</b> , 9 times     |
| <b>yon-kai, yon-do</b> , 4 times     | <b>jukkai, jū-do</b> , 10 times      |
| <b>go-kai, go-do</b> , 5 times       | <b>jūikkai, jūichi-do</b> , 11 times |
| <b>rokkai, roku-do</b> , 6 times     | <b>jūni-kai, jūni-do</b> , 12 times  |

## J. Extent, Frequency, Quantity

### 1. Extent

100%		<b>totemo</b>	very, extremely
		<b>amari . . . -nai/-masen</b>	not very
0%		<b>zenzen . . . -nai/-masen</b>	not at all

- ex. **Kono nomimono wa totemo oishii desu.** "This drink is very good."  
**Kono nomimono wa amari oishikunai desu.** "This drink is not very good."  
**Kono nomimono wa zenzen oishikunai desu.** "This drink is not good at all."

### 2. Frequency

100%		<b>itsumo</b>	always
		<b>yoku</b>	often
		<b>tokidoki</b>	sometimes
		<b>tamani</b>	occasionally
		<b>amari . . . -masen</b>	not very often
0%		<b>zenzen . . . -masen</b>	never

- ex. **Ban-gohan no ato de itsumo terebi o mimasu.** "(I) always watch TV after supper."  
**Ban-gohan no ato de yoku terebi o mimasu.** "(I) often watch TV after supper."  
**Ban-gohan no ato de tokidoki terebi o mimasu.** "(I) sometimes watch TV after supper."

**Ban-gohan no ato de tamani terebi o mimasu.** “(I) occasionally watch TV after supper.”

**Ban-gohan no ato de amari terebi o mimasen.** “(I) don’t often watch TV after supper.”

**Ban-gohan no ato de zenzen terebi o mimasen.** “(I) never watch TV after supper.”

### 3. Quantity

100%	<b>takusan</b>	a lot, many
	<b>sukoshi</b>	few, a little
0%	<b>zenzen . . . -masen</b>	none at all

ex. **Mise ga takusan arimasu.** “There are a lot of stores.”

**Mise ga sukoshi arimasu.** “There are a few stores.”

**Mise ga zenzen arimasen.** “There are no stores.”

## K. Time Expressions

### 1. Every, mai-

**mai-nichi**, every day

**mai-ban**, every evening, every night

**mai-asa**, every morning

**mai-shū**, every week

**mai-tsuki/mai-getsu**, every month

**mai-nen/mai-toshi**, every year

### 2. Period of Time

Minutes, **-fun**, **-pun**. How many minutes, **nam-pun (kan)**.

**ippun (kan)**, (for) 1 minute

**ni-fun (kan)**, (for) 2 minutes

**sam-pun (kan)**, (for ) 3 minutes

**yom-pun (kan)**, (for) 4 minutes

**go-fun (kan)**, (for) 5 minutes

**roppun (kan)**, (for) 6 minutes

**nana-fun (kan)**, (for) 7 minutes

**happun (kan)**, (for) 8 minutes

**hachi-fun (kan)**, “ ” “ ”

**kyū-fun (kan)**, (for) 9 minutes

**juppun (kan)**, (for) 10 minutes

**jūippun (kan)**, (for) 11 minutes

**jūni-fun (kan)**, (for) 12 minutes

Hours, **-jikan**. How many hours, **nan-jikan**.

**ichi-jikan**, (for) 1 hour

**ni-jikan**, (for) 2 hours

**san-jikan**, (for) 3 hours

**yo-jikan**, (for) 4 hours

**go-jikan**, (for) 5 hours

**roku-jikan**, (for) 6 hours

**nana-jikan**, (for) 7 hours

**shichi-jikan**, (for) 7 hours

**hachi-jikan**, (for) 8 hours

**ku-jikan**, (for) 9 hours

**ju-jikan**, (for) 10 hours

**jūichi-jikan**, (for) 11 hours

**jūni-jikan**, (for) 12 hours

Days, **-nichi (kan)**. How many days, **nan-nichi (kan)**.

**ichinichi (kan)**, (for) 1 day

**futsuka (kan)**, (for) 2 days

**mikka (kan)**, (for) 3 days

**yokka (kan)**, (for) 4 days

**nanoka (kan)**, (for) 7 days

**yōka (kan)**, (for) 8 days

**kokonoka (kan)**, (for) 9 days

**tōka (kan)**, (for) 10 days

**itsuka (kan)**, (for) 5 days  
**muika (kan)**, (for) 6 days

**jūichi-nichi (kan)**, (for) 11 days  
**jūni-nichi (kan)**, (for) 12 days

Weeks, **-shūkan**. How many weeks, **nan-shūkan**.

**issūkan**, (for) 1 week  
**ni-shūkan**, (for) 2 weeks  
**san-shūkan**, (for) 3 weeks  
**yon-shūkan**, (for) 4 weeks  
**go-shūkan**, (for) 5 weeks  
**roku-shūkan**, (for) 6 weeks

**nana-shūkan**, (for) 7 weeks  
**hasshūkan**, (for) 8 weeks  
**kyū-shūkan**, (for) 9 weeks  
**jusshūkan**, (for) 10 weeks  
**jūisshūkan**, (for) 11 weeks  
**jūni-shūkan**, (for) 12 weeks

Months, **-kagetsu (kan)**. How many months, **nan-kagetsu (kan)**.

**ikkagetsu (kan)**, (for) 1 month  
**ni-kagetsu (kan)**, (for) 2 months  
**san-kagetsu (kan)**, (for) 3 months  
**yon-kagetsu (kan)**, (for) 4 months  
**go-kagetsu (kan)**, (for) 5 months  
**rokkagetsu (kan)**, (for) 6 months  
**nana-kagetsu (kan)**, (for) 7 months

**shichi-kagetsu (kan)**, (for) 7 months  
**hakkagetsu (kan)**, (for) 8 months  
**kyū-kagetsu (kan)**, (for) 9 months  
**jukkagetsu (kan)**, (for) 10 months  
**jūikkagetsu (kan)**, (for) 11 months  
**jūni-kagetsu (kan)**, (for) 12 months

Years, **-nen (kan)**. How many years, **nan-nen (kan)**.

**ichi-nen (kan)**, (for) 1 year  
**ni-nen (kan)**, (for) 2 years  
**san-nen (kan)**, (for) 3 years  
**yo-nen (kan)**, (for) 4 years  
**go-nen (kan)**, (for) 5 years  
**roku-nen (kan)**, (for) 6 years  
**nana-nen (kan)**, (for) 7 years

**shichi-nen (kan)**, (for) 7 years  
**hachi-nen (kan)**, (for) 8 years  
**kyū-nen (kan)**, (for) 9 years  
**jū-nen (kan)**, (for) 10 years  
**jūichi-nen (kan)**, (for) 11 years  
**jūni-nen (kan)**, 12 years

Note: Except for **-jikan** and **-shūkan** the suffix **kan** may be considered optional and need be added only when specificity is called for.

### 3. Relative Time

#### Day

**ototoi**, day before yesterday  
**kinō**, yesterday  
**kyō**, today  
**ashita**, tomorrow  
**asatte**, day after tomorrow

#### Morning

**ototoi no asa**, morning before last  
**kinō no asa**, yesterday morning  
**kesa**, this morning  
**ashita no asa**, tomorrow morning  
**asatte no asa**, morning of the day  
after tomorrow

#### Week

**sensen-shū**, week before last  
**sen-shū**, last week  
**kon-shū**, this week  
**rai-shū**, next week  
**sarai-shū**, week after next

#### Month

**sensen-getsu**, month before last  
**sen-getsu**, last month  
**kon-getsu**, this month  
**rai-getsu**, next month  
**sarai-getsu**, month after next

Evening  
**ototoi no ban/yoru**, evening/night  
 before last  
**kinō no ban/yoru**, yesterday evening/  
 night  
**komban**, this evening  
**ashita no ban/yoru**, tomorrow even-  
 ing/night  
**asatte no ban/yoru**, evening/night of  
 the day after  
 tomorrow

Year  
**ototoshi**, year before last  
**kyonen**, last year  
**kotoshi**, this year  
**rai-nen**, next year  
**sarai-nen**, year after next

#### 4. Seasons

**haru**, spring      **natsu**, summer      **aki**, autumn      **fuyu**, winter

### L. Parts of the Face and Body

#### 1. Face, kao, and head, atama

<b>ago</b> , chin, jaw	<b>kami</b> , hair	<b>mayu/mayuge</b> , eyebrow
<b>ha</b> , tooth	<b>kuchi</b> , mouth	<b>me</b> , eye
<b>hana</b> , nose	<b>kuchibiru</b> , lip	<b>mimi</b> , ear
<b>hitai</b> , forehead	<b>mabuta</b> , eyelid	<b>shita</b> , tongue
<b>hoho</b> , cheek	<b>matsuge</b> , eyelash	

#### 2. Body, karada

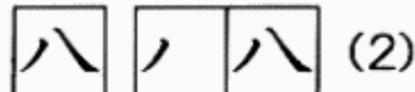
<b>ashi</b> , foot, leg	<b>mune</b> , chest	<b>te</b> , hand
<b>hifu</b> , skin	<b>nodo</b> , throat	<b>tsume</b> , nail
<b>kata</b> , shoulder	<b>onaka</b> , stomach, abdomen	<b>ude</b> , arm
<b>koshi</b> , hip	<b>oshiri</b> , buttock	<b>yubi</b> , finger, toe
<b>kubi</b> , neck	<b>senaka</b> , back	

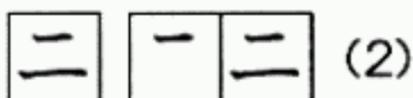
### M. Kanji

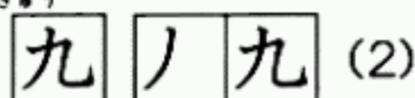
Each **kanji** conveys an idea, and most of them have at least two readings. The numbers in parentheses indicate the number of strokes.

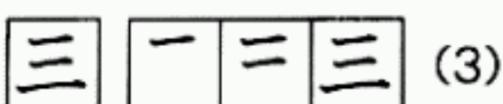
#### Counters, Day of the Week, Date

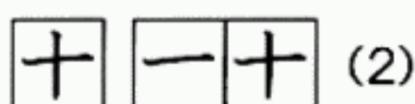
一  
いち  


八  
はち  


二  
に  


九  
く きゅう  


三  
さん  


十  
じゅう  


四 し、よん  
四 一 一 一 一 四 (5)

百 ひゃく  
百 一 一 一 百 百 百 (6)

五 ご  
五 一 一 五 五 (4)

千 せん  
千 一 一 千 (3)

六 ろく  
六 一 一 六 六 (4)

万 まん  
万 一 一 万 (3)

七 しち、なな  
七 一 七 (2)

一つ <small>ひとつ</small>	二つ <small>ふたつ</small>	三つ <small>みっつ</small>	四つ <small>よっつ</small>	五つ <small>いつつ</small>
六つ <small>むっつ</small>	七つ <small>ななつ</small>	八つ <small>やっつ</small>	九つ <small>ここのつ</small>	十 <small>とお</small>

日曜日 にちようび  
日 一 一 日 日 (4)

月曜日 げつようび  
月 一 一 月 月 (4)

火曜日 かようび  
火 一 一 火 火 (4)

水曜日 すいようび  
水 一 一 水 水 (4)

木曜日 もくようび  
木 一 一 木 木 (4)

金曜日 きんようび  
金 一 一 一 一 一 一 一 金 (8)

土曜日 どようび  
土 一 一 土 (3)

一月一日  
いちがついついたち  
九月八日  
くがつようか

四月六日  
しがつむいか  
十月十一日  
じゅうがつじゅういちにち

七月七日  
しちがつなのか  
十二月二十日  
じゅうにがつはつか

## QUIZ ANSWERS ■■■■■■■■■■

### Lesson 1

- I 1. Sumisu desu. 2. Iie, Nihon-jin dewa arimasen. 3. Bengoshi desu.
- II 1. Sumisu-san 2. Doitsu-jin 3. bengoshi 4. donata
- III 1. wa 2. ka, ka 3. no
- IV 1. Sumisu desu. 2. Hajimemashite. Dōzo yoroshiku. 3. Yamada-san, kochira wa Tōkyō Denki no Tanaka-san desu. 4. Sumisu-san wa Amerika-jin desu ka, Doitsu-jin desu ka.

### Lesson 2

- I 1. Meishi desu. 2. Hai, kaisha no namae desu. 3. Kaisha no [jūsho] desu. 4. Iie, uchi no denwa-bangō dewa arimasen. 5. Zero-san no san-yon-zero-zero no kyū-zero-san-ichi desu.
- II 1. kaisha 2. dare/donata 3. nan 4. nan-ban
- III 1. wa 2. wa, ka, no, wa, no 3. wa, no, no
- IV 1. Kochira wa Tanaka-san desu. 2. Kore wa Tanaka-san no meishi desu. 3. Kore wa Tanaka-san no uchi no denwa-bangō dewa arimasen. Kaisha no desu. 4. [Anata no] Kaisha no denwa-bangō wa nan-ban desu ka.

### Lesson 3

- I 1. Iie, 10-ji dewa arimasen. 2. 10-ji kara desu. 3. Iie, 7-ji made dewa arimasen.
- II 1. nan-ji 2. nan-yōbi 3. nan-nichi
- III 1. wa 2. no, wa 3. wa, kara, made
- IV 1. Dōmo arigatō. 2. Dō itashimashite. 3. Sumimasen. Yūbinkyoku wa nan-ji made desu ka. 4. Kyō wa 15-nichi desu. Ashita wa 16-nichi desu. 5. Kyō wa moku-yōbi desu. Kinō wa sui-yōbi deshita.

### Lesson 4

- I 1. Iie, [kore wa] tokei dewa arimasen. 2. [Are wa] Terebi desu. 3. [Are wa] 50,000-en desu. 4. Iie, [sore wa] 50,000-en dewa arimasen. 5. [Sore wa] 5,000-en desu. 6. Hai, [kore mo] 5,000-en desu.
- II 1. nan 2. ikura 3. donata 4. Are
- III 1. o 2. wa, mo, mo, mo, wa, wa
- IV 1. Sore o misete kudasai. 2. Kore o kudasai. 3. Kore wa ikura desu ka. 4. Irasshaimase.

### Lesson 5

- I 1. [Sono Doitsu no kamera wa/Sore wa] 50,000-en desu. 2. Iie, [kono kamera wa/kore wa] Doitsu no dewa arimasen. 3. [Kono kamera wa/Kore wa] 35,000-en desu. 4. [Ano chiisai rajio wa/Are wa] Nihon no desu.
- II 1. ikura 2. Are 3. Ijirisu, Doko
- III 1. wa, no, mo, no 2. o 3. o, x 4. wa 5. x, wa, x
- IV 1. Kore wa ikura desu ka. 2. Kono rajio wa ikura desu ka. 3. Watashi no tokei wa Nihon no dewa arimasen. Amerika no desu. 4. Sono chiisai tēpurekōdā o misete kudasai. 5. Fuirumu o mittsu kudasai. Dono fuirumu desu ka. Sono fuirumu desu.

### Lesson 6

- I 1. Kyōto no shisha ni/e ikimasu. 2. Kaisha no hito to ikimasu. 3. Asatte kaerimasu.
- II 1. Ginkō, Yūbinkyoku 2. Itsu 3. Doko, Dare/Donata

- III 1. x, ni/e 2. to, ni/e 3. wa, x 4. de 5. ni/e, mo, wa 6. ga  
 IV 1. Sumimasen, kono basu wa Tōkyō Eki ni/e ikimasu ka. 2. Tanaka-san wa kinō kaisha no hito to Ōsaka ni/e ikimashita. Soshite asatte Tōkyō ni/e kaerimasu. 3. Sumisu-san wa kyonen hitori de Nihon ni/e kimashita. 4. Dare/Donata ga kūkō ni/e ikimashita ka. Tanaka-san no hisho ga ikimashita.

### Lesson 7

- I 1. Sumisu-san ga ikimashita. 2. Nichi-yōbi ni ikimashita. 3. Iie, densha de ikimasen deshita. 4. Takushī de ikimashita.  
 II 1. doko 2. itsu 3. nan-nichi, Nan, Dare/Donata  
 III 1. de, ni/e, mo 2. x, ni  
 IV 1. Konnichiwa. 2. Yoku irasshaimashita. 3. Dōzo okake kudasai.  
 V 1. Dōzo kochira ni/e. 2. Dōzo ohairi kudasai. 3. Tanaka-san wa kinō takushī de uchi ni/e kaerimashita. 4. Howaito-san wa kin-yōbi ni Ōsaka no shisha ni/e ikimasu.

### Lesson 8

- I 1. Ima ni arimasu. 2. Shimbun to hana ga arimasu. 3. Tanaka-san no okusan ga imasu. 4. Dare mo imasen.  
 II 1. dare/donata 2. nani 3. dare/donata 4. nani  
 III 1. arimasu 2. imasu 3. imasen 4. arimasen  
 IV 1. no, ni, ga 2. no, to, ga 3. ya, ga 4. ga, mo  
 V 1. Ima ni isu ya tēburu ga arimasu. 2. Niwa ni Tanaka-san to otoko no ko ga imasu. 3. Daidokoro ni dare ga imasu ka. Dare mo imasen. 4. Isu no ue ni nani mo arimasen.

### Lesson 9

- I 1. Yūbinkyoku ni ikimasu. 2. Iie, sūpā no mae dewa arimasen.  
 II 1. doko 2. nani 3. doko 4. Dōshite 5. ikutsu 6. nan-nin  
 III 1. wa, x, no, ni 2. ni, x, x 3. ni/e, kara 4. wa, ni  
 IV 1. Saka-ya wa yaoya no tonari desu./Saka-ya wa yaoya no tonari ni arimasu. 2. Sumimasen, o-tearai wa doko desu ka./Sumimasen, o-tearai wa doko ni arimasu ka. Asoko desu./Asoko ni arimasu. 3. Howaito-san wa Ōsaka ni/e ikimashita kara, kyō kaisha ni imasen. 4. Dōshite kyō byōin wa 12-ji made desu ka. Do-yōbi desu kara. 5. Hon-ya no mae ni kodomo ga 5-nin imasu.

### Lesson 10

- I 1. Kabuki o mimasu. 2. Iie, hitori de mimasen. 3. Senshū kaimashita. 4. Ginza no pureigaido de kaimashita.  
 II 1. Nan-yōbi 2. doko 3. nani 4. nani  
 III 1. ni 2. de, ni/e 3. de, o 4. de, mo 5. o 6. x, de, o  
 IV 1. Nichi-yōbi ni depāto de kamera o kaimashita. 45,000-en deshita. 2. Kinō nani o shimashita ka. Asa, uchi de Nihon-go no tēpu o kikumashita. Gogo Ginza ni/e ikimashita. Soshite, Ginza de kamera o kaimashita. 3. Howaito-san wa asa nani mo tabemasen.

### Lesson 12

- I 1. Katō-san ga shimashita. 2. Imasen deshita. 3. 9-ji goro kaerimasu. 4. Hai, shimasu.  
 II 1. nani, Dare/Donata 2. dare/donata 3. Dare/Donata  
 III 1. Iie, kimasen 2. mimasu, Iie, mimasen 3. yoku 4. yomimasu, yomimasen  
 IV 1. ni 2. ni 3. x, to 4. ni, o 5. ga, wa  
 V 1. Moshi-moshi, Tanaka-san no o-taku desu ka. 2. Tōkyō Denki no Tanaka desu. Hayashi-san wa irasshaimasu ka. 3. Mata ato de denwa o shimasu. 4. Kurāku-san ni

kaisha no denwa-bangō o kikimashita. 5. Kurāku-san wa amari tomodachi ni tegami o kakimasen ga, Howaito-san wa yoku kakimasu.

### Lesson 13

- I 1. Hai, tabemashita. 2. Nihon no o-kashi o tabemashita. 3. O-cha o nomimashita.
- II 1. genki 2. omoshiroi 3. donata/dare 4. donna
- III 1. oishikunai desu 2. kireina 3. omoshirokunai desu 4. yokunai desu 5. yūmeina 6. chikai desu
- IV 1. Kōhī wa ikaga desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu. Itadakimasu. 2. Kōhī o mō ippai ikaga desu ka. Iie, mō kekkō desu. 3. Watashi-tachi wa yūmeina resutoran de ban-gohan o tabemashita. 4. Ano kissaten wa kirei desu ga, shizuka dewa arimasen. 5. [Watashi wa] Kyō isogashii desu.

### Lesson 14

- I 1. Kabuki o mimashita. 2. Omoshirokatta desu. 3. Iyahōn de kikimashita.
- II 1. yasashii 2. chikai 3. tsumaranai 4. ōkii 5. takai 6. isogashii 7. atsui 8. shizukana 9. furui 10. warui
- III 1. nani, dō, yokatta 2. Dōshite 3. donna
- IV 1. yokatta desu 2. dō 3. nigiyaka deshita 4. kirei dewa arimasen 5. omoshiroku-nakatta desu 6. genki deshita
- V 1. Kinō no kaigi wa dō deshita ka. 2. Kinō no tenki wa yokatta desu. 3. Ano resutoran no ryōri wa amari oishikunakatta desu.

### Lesson 15

- I 1. Tanjōbi ni moraimashita. 2. Kurāku-san ni/kara moraimashita. 3. Kurāku-san ga agemashita. 4. Tanaka-san ni agemashita.
- II 1. dare/donata 2. dare/donata 3. nani
- III 1. ni/kara 2. ga, o 3. ni, o 4. ni, o, mo
- IV 1. Tanaka-san wa Kurāku-san ni kireina kabin o moraimashita. 2. Hayashi-san wa Sumisu-san ni Kyōto no chizu o agemashita. 3. Ano hito ni meishi o agemashita ka. Hai, agemashita.

### Lesson 16

- I 1. Nikkō ni ikimasu. 2. Iie, hitori de ikimasen. 3. Tōkyō Eki (no kaisatsuguchi) de aimasu. 4. 7-ji ni aimasu. 5. Densha de ikimasu.
- II 1. Doko, Nan-ji 2. Dare/Donata
- III 1. ni, o 2. ni, ni 3. ni, ni 4. ni, de
- IV 1. Do-yōbi ni depāto ni/e kaimono ni ikimashita. 2. Issho ni shokuji o shimasen ka. Ee, shimashō. Doko ni/e ikimashō ka. Eki no chikaku no atarashii resutoran ni/e ikimasen ka. Ee, sō shimashō.

### Lesson 17

- I 1. Do-yōbi [no ban] desu. 2. Ikimasu. 3. Tanaka-san no uchi de shimasu. 4. Azabu ni arimasu. 5. Hai, kakimasu.
- II 1. ni, ni, ni/e, ni, o 2. ni, ga, ga 3. o
- III 1. Nichi-yōbi ni uchi ni/e kimasen ka. 2. Kin-yōbi ni uchi de Kurāku-san no sōbetsukai o shimasu. Kimasen ka. Ee, zehi. 3. Issho ni shokuji o shimasen ka. 4. Samui desu ne. Mado o shimemashō ka. Hai, onegaishimasu. 5. Chizu o kakimashō ka.

## Lesson 18

- I 1. Eiga no kippu ga arimasu. 2. 2-mai arimasu. 3. Pāti ni ikimasu. 4. Pāti ga arimasu. 5. Iie, ikimasen. 6. Ashita Sumisu-san to ikimasu.
- II 1. nan-nin 2. itsu 3. nani 4. doko
- III 1. ga 2. ni 3. de 4. ga, x 5. de, ga 6. no, ga, x, x, ga
- IV 1. Watashi wa imōto ga 3-nin arimasu. Imōto wa Tōkyō to Ōsaka ni imasu. 2. Tanaka-san, 8-gatsu ni yasumi ga arimasu ka. Iie, arimasen. 9-gatsu ni arimasu. 3. Raishū, Kyōto no shisha de kaigi ga arimasu.

## Lesson 19

- I 1. Sumisu-san no tomodachi desu. 2. Kinō kimashita. 3. Raishū no moku-yōbi made imasu. 4. Mikka(kan) imasu. 5. Kyōto ya Nara ni/e ikimasu. 6. Furui o-tera ya niwa o mimasu.
- II 1. tabete 4. kite 7. ite 10. nonde  
2. itte 5. kaite 8. mite 11. atte  
3. yonde 6. kaette 9. shite 12. kiite
- III 1. itsu/nan-nen no nan-gatsu, itsu/nan-nen no nan-gatsu 2. donogurai/nan-nichi(kan) gurai/nan-shūkan gurai 3. Itsu
- IV 1. Soshite 2. itte 3. donogurai 4. gurai 5. dō 6. nan, donogurai, gurai
- V 1. Maiasa nyūsu o kiite, kaisha ni/e ikimasu. 2. Tanaka-san ni atte, issho ni ban-gohan o tabemashita. Soshite uchi ni kaerimashita. 3. Donogurai uchi de Nihon-go no benkyō o shimasu ka. 30-pun dake shimasu. 4. Kinō doko ni/e mo ikimasen deshita. Uchi ni imashita.

## Lesson 20

- I 1. Sakaya ni (denwa o) shimashita. 2. Hayashi-san no uchi ni todokemasu. 3. 20-pon todokemasu. 4. 3-ji made ni todokemasu. 5. Hai, oshiemashita.
- II 1. itte 4. kiite 7. mottekite 10. atte  
2. ite 5. magatte 8. itte 11. nonde  
3. matte 6. misete 9. shimete 12. shite
- III 1. o 2. o, x 3. ni 4. o 5. o, to, o, ni/e 6. o, ni/e
- IV 1. Menyū o misete kudasai. Hai, dōzo. 2. Sumimasen ga, uchi ni biru o 12-hon todokete kudasai. Hai, wakarimashita. Kurāku-san desu ne. Ee, sō desu. 3. Kono chiisai terebi o kudasai. Hai, wakarimashita. Todokemashō ka. Iie, kekkō desu. Kuruma de kimashita kara.

## Lesson 22

- I 1. Senshū ikimashita. 2. Iie, (issho ni) ikimasen deshita. 3. Ashita ikimasu. 4. Azabu de orimashita. 5. Iie, kakarimasen deshita.
- II 1. nan 2. Doko 3. Nani 4. donogurai/nan-jikan gurai 5. Dōyatte
- III 1. de, ni, de, o 2. o, ni, ni, de 3. made, de, x
- IV 1. Kinō Ginza no hoteru de tomodachi no sōbetsukai ga arimashita. 2. Kaisha o 6-ji ni dete, basu ni notte, Ginza de orimashita. 3. Kaisha kara hoteru made donogurai kakarimashita ka. 35-fun gurai kakarimashita.

## Lesson 23

- I 1. Denki-ya de moraimashita. 2. Terebi no katarogu o moraimashita. 3. Iie, kēsu no naka ni arimasen deshita. 4. Kēsu no ue ni arimashita.
- II 1. haitte 4. mite 7. shite 10. itte  
2. kite 5. tsukatte 8. totte 11. ite

3. tabete 6. nonde 9. kiite 12. itte
- III 1. totte 2. shi, shi 3. ake, akete 4. tsukatte, matte 5. ki, kite 6. moratte 7. katte
- IV 1. Denki o tsukemashō ka. Hai, onegaishimasu. 2. Kono denwa o tsukatte mo ii desu ka. Hai, dōzo. 3. 3-ji made koko ni ite mo ii desu ka.

### Lesson 24

- I 1. Keikan ga oshiemashita. 2. Tsugi no kado o hidari ni magarimasu. 3. Chūshajō ni/e ikimasu.
- II 1. tabenai 5. iwanai 9. akenai 13. tsukawanai  
2. minai 6. yomanai 10. magaranai 14. shimenai  
3. ikanai 7. shinai 11. kesanai 15. toranai  
4. konai 8. suwanai 12. tsukenai
- III 1. sutte, suwanaide 2. akete, akete 3. itte, kite 4. shime, shimenaide
- IV 1. wa, kara, o 2. o, ni/e 3. de, o 4. o, ni
- V 1. Ima ano heya ni hairanaide kudasai. 2. Koko de tabako o suwanaide kudasai.  
3. Tsugi no shingō o migi ni/e magatte kudasai.

### Lesson 25

- I 1. 3-gai ni imasu. 2. Kaigishitsu ni imasu. 3. Suraido o mite imasu.
- II 1. doko/nan-gai, nani 2. doko 3. dare/donata 4. doko
- III 1. Hayashi-san wa Sumisu-san ni denwa o shimasu. 2. Hayashi-san wa Sumisu-san ni denwa o shite imasu. 3. Ano onna no ko wa nani o shite imasu ka. Tomodachi o matte imasu. 4. Howaito-san wa ima shigoto o shite imasen.

### Lesson 27

- I 1. Sumisu-san to Hayashi-san ga hanashi o shite imasu. 2. Sumisu-san no o-niisan ga kimashita. 3. Iie, imasen. 4. Ryokō-gaisha ni tsutomete imasu. 5. Nyū Yōku ni sunde imasu./Amerika ni sunde imasu.
- II 1. Doko 2. doko 3. Dare/Donata 4. doko
- III 1. no 2. ni, ni 3. de 4. ni, no, ni 5. de, no, o, de
- IV 1. Tanaka-san o shitte imasu ka. Iie, shirimasen. 2. Watashi wa kaisha no chikaku ni sunde imasu. Aruite 15-fun desu. 3. Sumisu-san wa ABC ni tsutomete imasu.

### Lesson 28

- I 1. Nihon no furui kagu ga suki desu. 2. Hai, mō kaimashita. 3. Iie, shirimasen.  
4. Furui kagu no mise ni tsuite kikimasu.
- II 1. nani 2. doko 3. Donna 4. nani
- III 1. wa, ga, ga, wa 2. wa, ga 3. ga, ni, ni/e 4. mo 5. mo, ni, de, o/ga
- IV 1. Howaito-san wa ringo ga suki desu. 2. Sukī ga dekimasu ka. Hai, dekimasu.  
3. Ashita tomodachi ni atte, issho ni tenisu o/ga shitai desu. 4. Kinō tegami o/ga kakitakatta desu ga, jikan ga arimasen deshita. 5. [Watashi wa] Nodo ga itai desu kara, nani mo tabetakunai desu.

### Lesson 29

- I 1. Resutoran ni imasu. 2. Bīru o nomimasu. 3. Shabushabu o tabemasu.
- II 1. nani 2. niku 3. nan-ji 4. doko
- III 1. ni/e, wa, wa, ga 2. wa, ga, ka, ga, ka, ga 3. no, o 4. no, ni, no, ni/e
- IV 1. Dezāto wa nani ga ii desu ka. Kudamono o onegaishimasu. 2. Kaigi no mae ni kōhi o/ga nomitakatta desu ga, jikan ga arimasen deshita kara, kaigi no ato de nomimashita.

# JAPANESE-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

- a*, Ah, 53  
*achira*, over there, that person over there, 199  
*agemashita*, gave; *agemasu*, *ageru*, give, 109  
*aimashō ka*, shall (we) meet, 114; *aimasu*, *au*, meet, 89  
*aisukurīmu*, ice cream, 184  
*akachan*, baby, 117  
*akai*, red, 48  
*akemashō ka*, shall (I) open; *akemasu*, *akeru*, open, 120  
*amari* . . . *-masen*, does not . . . often, 89  
*amari* . . . *-nai/masen*, not very . . . , 97  
*Amerika*, America, 23  
*Amerika-jin*, an American, 23  
*Amerika Taishikan*, American Embassy, 23  
*anata*, you, 21, 23  
*ane*, older sister, 110, 169  
*ani*, older brother, 168, 169  
*ano*, that (over there), 46, 48  
*aoi*, blue, 50  
*are*, that (one) over there, 40, 46  
*arigatō gozaimasu*, (I am) grateful, 26  
*arimasen*, do/does not have, 20  
*arimasendeshita*, was/were not, 33  
*arimasu*, *aru*, is/are (inanimate), 20, 66  
*arimasu*, *aru*, have, 124  
*arukimashita*, walked; *arukimasu*, *aruku*, walk, 145  
*asa*, morning, 83  
*asa-gohan*, breakfast, morning meal, 83  
*asatte*, the day after tomorrow, 53  
*ashita*, tomorrow, 33  
*asoko*, over there, that place (over there), 70  
*atama*, head, 176  
*atarashii*, new, fresh, 100  
*ato de*, afterwards, later, 88  
*atsukunakatta*, was not hot; *atsui*, hot, 104
- ban*, evening, 83  
*-ban*, number, 29  
*banana*, banana, 20  
*banchi* (part of a block in an address), 137  
*bangō*, number, 26  
*ban-gohan*, dinner, evening meal, 83  
*basu*, bus, 57  
*basu-noriba*, bus terminal, 76  
*bengoshi*, lawyer, 19  
*benkyō o shimasu (suru)*, study, 80  
*benri(na)*, convenient, 100  
*bideo*, video, 121  
*biru*, building, 70  
*biru*, beer, 49  
*botchan*, son, 169  
*bun*, part, 41  
*bunka*, culture, 189  
*byōin*, hospital, 74
- cha*, tea, 83  
*chichi*, father, 110  
*chigaimasu*, *chigau*, That's/It's wrong/different, 92  
*chiisai*, small, 44  
*chika*, basement, underground, 170  
*chikai*, near, close to, 98  
*chika 1-ikai (ikkai)*, first basement, 170  
*chikaku*, neighborhood, vicinity; *no chikaku ni*, near, close to, 68  
*chikatetsu*, subway, underground railway, 57  
*chizu*, map, 83  
*chō*, town, community, 137  
*-chōme* (block in an address), 137  
*chotto*, a little, 127  
*Chūgoku*, China, 23  
*Chūgoku-jin*, a Chinese, 23  
*chūshajō*, parking lot, 155  
*chūsha kinshi*, no parking, 154
- daidokoro*, kitchen, 66  
*dake*, only, 130  
*dame*, no good, useless, hopeless, out of the question, 155; *dame(na)*, 191  
*dare*, who, 21  
*dare mo* . . . *-masen*, nobody is, 66  
*dare no*, whose, 29  
*de*, at, 79  
*de*, by, 61  
*de gozaimasu*, This is . . . , 92  
*deguchi*, exit, 156  
*dekimasu*, *dekiru*, be able to, can (do), be ready/finished/done, 143, 174, 176  
*demasu*, *deru*, leave, start, 146  
*demo*, but, 121  
*denchi*, battery, 46  
*denki*, (electric) light, 121  
*denki-ya*, electrical appliance store/clerk, 150  
*densha*, (electric) train, 56  
*denwa*, telephone, 26  
*denwa-bangō*, telephone number, 26  
*denwa o shimasu (suru)*, make a phone call, telephone, 79, 89  
*depāto*, department store, 32  
*deshita*, was/were, 20, 33  
*desu*, is/are, 19, 54, 67  
*dewa*, well then, 39, 42  
*dewa/ya arimasen*, is/are not, 21  
*dezāto*, dessert, 183

*dō*, how, 103  
*-do*, times, 137  
*-do*, degree, 180  
*doa*, door, 121  
*dochira*, where, 119  
*dō deshita ka*, How was it, 103, 104  
*dō desu ka*, How is it, 96  
*dō itashimashite*, Don't mention it, You're welcome, 32  
*Doitsu*, Germany, 23  
*Doitsu-go*, German language, 178  
*Doitsu-jin*, a German, 23  
*doko*, where, belonging to or coming from what place, 48, 80  
*doko ni mo*, nowhere, 67  
*dōmo*, very much, 26  
*dōmo*, thanks, 142, 159  
*dōmo arigatō gozaimasu*, Thank you very much, 26  
*donata*, who, 21, 23  
*donna*, what kind of, 96, 100  
*dono*, which, 50  
*donogurai*, how long, 134; how much, 146  
*doraibu*, driving, a drive, 116  
*dore*, which one, 44  
*dō shimashita ka*, What's the matter, 180  
*dōshite*, why, 73, 76  
*dōyatte*, how, 145  
*do-yōbi*, Saturday, 35  
*dōzo*, please (accept, do), 26, 96  
*dōzo o-daiji ni*, Look after yourself, 180  
*dōzo yoroshiku*, Please favor me, 19, 21

*e*, picture, 83  
*e*, to (particle), 53  
*ee*, yes, 26  
*eiga*, movie, film, 36  
*Ei-go*, English language, 104  
*eki*, station, 56  
*en*, yen, 39

*fuirumu*, film, 39, 45  
*-fun (-pun)*, minute, 32  
*funabin*, sea mail, 61, 180  
*Furansu*, France, 48  
*Furansu-go*, French language, 179  
*furui*, old, not fresh, 100  
*futari*, 2 people, 76  
*futatsu*, two, 48  
*futsuka*, 2nd day of the month, 35

*ga* (subject marker, particle), 57  
*ga*, but (particle), 86  
*ga* (particle), 88  
*gaikoku*, foreign country, 171  
*gakkō*, school, 29  
*gakusei*, student, 23

*-gatsu*, month, 33  
*genkan*, entrance hall, 68  
*genki(na)*, well, healthy, 100  
*getsu-yōbi*, Monday, 35  
*ginkō*, bank, 23  
*go*, five, 28  
*-go*, language, 48  
*go-* (honorific), 88  
*gō*, number, 137  
*gochisōsama*, Thank you for a lovely meal, 96  
*gogo*, p.m., afternoon, 32  
*gohan*, meal, 80  
*gojūppun, gojippun*, 50 minutes, 32  
*5(go)-nin*, 5 people, 74  
*goro*, about, 86, 89  
*gorufu*, golf, 106  
*go-ryōshin*, parents, 169  
*go-shōkai shimasu*, Let me introduce you, 23  
*go-shujin*, husband, 88  
*gozen*, a.m., morning, 33  
*gurai*, about, approximately, 101, 145  
*gurūpu*, group, 189  
*gyū-niku*, beef, 100

*ha*, tooth, 178  
*hachi*, eight, 28  
*hagaki*, postcard, 45, 68  
*haha*, mother, 91, 169  
*hai*, yes, certainly, 20, 23  
*-hai*, measureful (counter), 95  
*haikingu*, hiking, 117  
*hairimasu, hairu*, enter, go/come in, 61, 150  
*haizara*, ashtray, 42  
*hajimemashite*, How do you do, 19, 21;  
*hajimeru*, begin, 21  
*hako*, box, 68  
*han*, half, 30 minutes after the hour, 33  
*hana*, flower, 66  
*hanashi o shimasu (suru)*, talk, 161  
*hana-ya*, flower shop, florist, 45  
*hatsuka*, 20th day of the month, 35  
*heya*, room, 76  
*hi*, day, 166  
*hidari*, left, 139  
*hidari-gawa*, left-hand side, 155  
*higashi*, east, 54  
*hikōki*, airplane, 76  
*hima(na)*, free, 100  
*hiragana* (Japanese script), 111  
*hirakimasu, hiraku*, open, 32  
*hiru*, noon, daytime, 33  
*hiru-gohan*, lunch, noon meal, 80  
*hiru-yasumi*, lunch time, noon recess, 33  
*hisho*, secretary, 23  
*hitā*, heater, 121  
*hito*, person, 32  
*hitori*, 1 person, 76

*hitori de*, alone, 53  
*hitotsu*, one, 46  
*hoka*, other, 189  
*hon*, book, 29  
*-hon* (counter), 45, 49  
*hontō ni*, really, truly, 101  
*hon-ya*, book store/seller, 45, 74  
*hoteru*, hotel, 91  
*hyaku*, one hundred, 33, 41  
  
*ichi*, one, 28  
*ichi-do*, once, one time, 137  
*1(ichi)-ji han*, half past one, 33  
*ichiman*, ten thousand, 41  
*ichioku*, one hundred million, 41  
*Igirisu*, United Kingdom, 48  
*ii*, good, 79  
*ii desu ne*, It's/That's nice/good/all right, 79  
*iee*, no, 20, 23  
*iee, dame desu*, No, you can't, 155  
*iee, mō kekkō desu*, No, (thank you). That was enough, 95  
*iimasu, iu*, say, speak, 137  
*ikaga*, how, 95  
*ikaga desu ka*, How is it, 95, 96  
*ikimasu, iku*, go, is going, will go, 53  
*ikkagetsu*, (for) one month, 180  
*1-kai (ikkai)*, first floor, ground floor, 68  
*ikura*, how much, 39, 146  
*ikutsu*, how many, 46, 76  
*ima*, living room, 66  
*ima*, now, 32  
*imasu, iru*, is/are (animate), 66  
*imasu, iru*, stay, 130  
*imōto, imōto-san*, younger sister, 126, 169  
*ippai*, 1 cupful/glassful/bottleful, 95  
*irasshaimase*, Come in, Welcome, 39  
*irasshaimashita*, came, 61; *irasshaimasu*,  
*irassharu*, is/are, 61, 88  
*iriguchi*, entrance, 76  
*iro*, color, 108  
*iroiro(na)*, various, 174  
*isha*, doctor, 180  
*isogashii*, busy, 100  
*issho ni*, together (with), 114  
*isu*, chair, 66  
*itadakimasu, itadaku*, eat, 95, 96  
*itai*, aching, painful, 176  
*Italia*, Italy, 48  
*itoko*, cousin, 169  
*itsu*, when, 32, 36  
*itsuka*, 5th day of the month, 35  
*itsutsu*, five, 49  
*itte kudasai*, Please say/speak, 137  
*iyahōn*, earphones, 61, 104  
  
*ja*, well then, 39

*-ji*, o'clock, 32  
*jikan*, time, 124  
*-jikan*, (for) . . . hours, 133  
*-jin*, person (suffix), 23  
*jisho*, dictionary, 110  
*jogingu o shimasu (suru)*, jog, 92  
*jōzu(na)*, good at, skillful, 176  
*jū*, ten, 28  
*jugyō*, class, lesson, 126  
*18(jūhachi)-nichi*, 18th day of the month, 33,  
 35  
*11(jūichi)-nichi*, 11th day of the month, 35  
*10(jū)-ji*, 10 o'clock, 32  
*10(jū)-mai*, 10 sheets, 49  
*12(jūni)-hon*, 12 bottles, 49  
*jūsho*, address, 29  
*jūsu*, juice, 83  
*jūyokka*, 14th day of the month, 35  
  
*ka* (question marker, particle), 20, 23  
*kabin*, vase, 108  
*kabuki*, kabuki (Japanese theater), 78  
*kado*, corner, 138  
*kaerimasu, kaeru*, return, come/go back, 53  
*-kagetsu*, (for) . . . month(s), 180  
*kagi*, key, 29  
*kagu*, furniture, 174  
*-kai*, floor (counter), 68  
*kaigi*, conference, meeting, 36  
*kaigi o shimasu (suru)*, hold a meeting/conference, 86; *kaigi o shite imasu*, be holding a meeting, be in conference, 158, 159  
*kaigi-shitsu*, conference/meeting room, 158  
*kaimashita*, bought; *kaimasu, kau*, buy, 79  
*kaimono*, shopping, 83  
*kaimono o shimasu (suru)*, shop, 81  
*kaisatsuguchi*, ticket gate, 76  
*kaisha*, company, 26  
*kaishain*, company employee, 23  
*kakarimasu, kakaru*, (it) takes/costs, 145, 146  
*kakemasu, kakeru*, sit, 61  
*kakimasu, kaku*, write, draw, 89  
*kamera*, camera, 44  
*kamera-ya*, camera store/clerk, camera seller,  
 44  
*-kan*, for (a period of time), 132  
*Kanada*, Canada, 62  
*kanai*, wife, 111, 169  
*kangaekata*, way of thinking, 189  
*kangeikai*, welcome party, 121  
*kanji* (Chinese characters), 111  
*kanrinin*, superintendent, 73  
*kara*, from (particle), 32, 56  
*kara*, so, because (particle), 73  
*kasa*, umbrella, 39, 42  
*katarogu*, catalogue, 150  
*ka-yōbi*, Tuesday, 35

*kazoku*, family, 83, 169  
*keikan*, policeman, 154  
*keizai*, economy, 189  
*kēki*, cake, 139  
*kekkon*, marriage, 126; *kekkon shite imasu*, be married, 168  
*kekkon-shiki*, wedding, 126  
*keshimasu*, *kesu*, turn/switch off, 121  
*kēsu*, showcase, 150  
*ki*, tree, 101  
*kibun*, feeling, 180  
*kikimasu*, *kiku*, listen, hear, 83; ask, 90, 91  
*kimashita*, came, 54, 56; *kimasu*, *kuru*, come, 56  
*kinō*, yesterday, 33  
*kin-yōbi*, Friday, 33, 35  
*ki o tsukete*, Take care, Be careful, 166  
*kippu*, ticket, 76  
*kippu-uriba*, ticket office, 76  
*kirei(na)*, pretty, clean, 95  
*kiro*, kilogram, 49  
*kissaten*, coffee shop, café, 83  
*kitte*, postage stamp, 49  
*ko*, child, 66  
*kōban*, police box, 76  
*kōcha*, black tea, 83  
*kochira*, this one, this person, 19, 21; *kochira*, here, this way, this direction, 61  
*kodomo*, child, 69, 169  
*kōen*, park, 95, 100  
*kōhī*, coffee, 83  
*kōkanshu*, switchboard/telephone operator, 92  
*koko*, here, this place, 76  
*kokonoka*, 9th day of the month, 35  
*kokonotsu*, nine, 48  
*kōkūbin*, airmail, 180  
*komban*, this evening, tonight, 83  
*konde imasu*, *komimasu*, *komu*, be crowded, 189  
*kongetsu*, this month, 126  
*kono*, this, 46, 47  
*konshū*, this week, 130  
*kopī*, photocopy, 121; *kopī o shimasu (suru)*, 120  
*koppu*, mug, glass, cup, 117  
*kore*, this (one), 26, 39, 46  
*kōsaten*, intersection, 139  
*koto*, thing, 174  
*kotoshi*, this year, 86  
*ku*, nine, 28  
*kudamono*, fruit, 179  
*kudasai*, Please give (me) . . . , 39  
*9(ku)-ji*, 9 o'clock, 32  
*kukki*, cookie, 96  
*kūkō*, airport, 57  
*kurai*, dark, 121  
*kuremasu*, *kureru*, give, 109

*kurīningu*, dry cleaning; *kurīningu-ya*, dry cleaner, 143  
*kurisumasu kādo*, Christmas card, 91  
*kuroi*, black, 50  
*kuruma*, car, vehicle, 29  
*kusuri*, medicine, 76  
*kusuri-ya*, pharmacy, drug store, 76  
*kutsu*, shoes, 83  
*kutsushita*, socks, 179  
*kyō*, today, 33  
*kyōdai*, brothers, sisters, siblings, 126, 169  
*kyonen*, last year, 54, 56  
*kyū*, nine, 28  
  
*machi*, town, street, community, 106, 137  
*machimasu*, *matsu*, wait, 92  
*mada desu*, not yet, 143  
*made*, to, as far as (particle), 145  
*made*, until (particle), 32  
*made ni*, by (particle), 137  
*mado*, window, 68  
*mae*, in front of, before, 68  
*magatte kudasai*, Please turn; *magarimasu*, *magaru*, turn, 138  
*mago*, grandchild, 169  
*-mai* (counter), 45, 49  
*mai-*, every, 80  
*maiasa*, every morning, 83  
*maiban*, every evening/night, 83  
*maidō*, each (every) time; *maidō arigatō gozaimasu*, Thank you (for your patronage) each time, 137  
*mainen*, every year, 91  
*mainichi*, every day, 54, 80  
*maishū*, every week, 83  
*maitzuki*, every month, 189  
*massugu*, straight, straight ahead, 142  
*mata*, again, 88  
*matsuri*, festival, 179  
*matte kudasai*, Please wait; *machimasu*, *matsu*, wait, 130, 138  
*megane*, (eye)glasses, 76  
*mei*, *meigo-san*, niece, 169  
*meishi*, business card, name card, 26  
*menyū*, menu, 139  
*meron*, melon, 183  
*meshiagatte kudasai*, Please eat/have (some), 95  
*migi*, right, 138  
*mikan*, tangerine, 49  
*mikka*, 3rd day of the month, 35  
*mikka*, (for) 3 days, 130  
*mimasu*, *miru*, see, watch, look at, 78, 130  
*mina-sama*, everyone, 190  
*mina-sama ni dōzo yoroshiku*, Best regards to everyone, 190  
*minna*, *mina-san*, everyone, 166

*miruku*, milk, 83  
*mise*, store, shop, 91  
*misete kudasai*, Please show me; *misemasu*,  
*miseru*, show, 39  
*mite imasu (iru)*, is looking, is watching, 158  
*mittsu*, three, 45  
*mizu*, water, 42  
*mo*, too (particle), 39  
*mō*, already, 79, 96  
*mō*, more (another), 95  
*moku-yōbi*, Thursday, 33, 35  
*moraimashita*, received; *moraimasu*, *morau*,  
receive, 108, 109  
*moshi moshi*, hello, 88; I say, 154  
*mō sugu*, very soon, 190  
*mottekite kudasai*, Please bring; *mottekimasu*,  
*mottekuru*, bring, 137  
*muika*, 6th day of the month, 35  
*musuko*, *musuko-san*, son, 127, 169  
*musume*, *musume-san*, daughter, 127, 169  
*muttsu*, six, 48  
*muzukashii*, difficult, hard, 100

*naisen-bangō*, extension number, 91  
*naka*, inside, 68  
*namae*, name, 26  
*nana*, seven, 28  
*nanatsu*, seven, 48  
*nan-ban*, what number, 27, 29  
*nan-bon*, how many bottles, 76  
*nangatsu*, which month, 32  
*nani/nan*, what, 27, 29; *nani/nan de*, how, by  
what means, 62, 63  
*nani mo*, nothing; *nani mo . . . -masen*, noth-  
ing is, 69  
*nan-ji*, what time, 32  
*nan-jikan*, how many hours, 146  
*nanji made ni*, by what time, 137  
*nan-mai*, how many sheets, 76  
*nan-nen*, what year, 63  
*nan-nichi*, which day of the month, how many  
days, 32, 36, 146  
*nan-nin*, how many people, 76  
*nanoka*, 7th day of the month, 35  
*nan-pun*, how many minutes, 146  
*nan-sai*, how old, 127  
*nan-yōbi*, which day of the week, 32, 36  
*natsu*, summer, 37  
*natsu-yasumi*, summer vacation, 37  
*ne*, Isn't it/Aren't there, 70, 73  
*nekutai*, necktie, 110  
*-nen*, year, 63  
*nengajō*, New Year's card, 91  
*netsu*, fever, 180  
*ni*, in, at (particle), 66  
*ni*, on (particle), 61, 145  
*ni*, to (particle), 53, 114, 115

*ni*, to, from (particle), 79, 88, 108, 109  
*ni*, two, 28  
*-nichi*, day, 33  
*nichi-yōbi*, Sunday, 35  
*ni chōme ni no ichi*, 2-chōme 2-1 (address),  
137  
*nigiyaka(na)*, lively, 99, 104  
*Nihon*, Japan, 23  
*Nihon Ginkō*, Bank of Japan, 23  
*Nihon-go*, Japanese language, 48  
*Nihon-jin*, a Japanese, 23  
*2(ni)-jikan*, 2 hours, 133  
*nijū*, twenty, 28  
*20(niju)ppun gurai*, (for) about 20 minutes,  
101  
*nijūyokka*, 24th day of the month, 35  
*2(ni)-kiro*, 2 kilograms, 48  
*niku*, meat, 76  
*niku-ya*, meat store, butcher, 76  
*nimotsu*, parcel, 180  
*-nin*, person/people (counter), 74  
*ni tsuite*, concerning, about, 174  
*niwa*, garden, 66  
*ni yoroshiku*, Best regards to, 21, 190  
*no* (possessive particle), 19, 21  
*no ato de*, after, 132  
*nodo*, throat, 178  
*no mae ni*, before, in front of, 68, 133  
*nomimasu*, *nomu*, drink, take (medicine), 81,  
83  
*nomimono*, beverage, drink, 174, 183  
*-noriba*, boarding place, 74  
*norimashita*, got on; *norimasu*, *noru*, get on,  
ride, take, 145  
*nyūsu*, news, 83

*o*, from, out of (particle), 146  
*o* (object marker, particle), 39, 79  
*o-* (honorific), 69  
*oba*, *oba-san*, aunt, 169  
*obā-san*, grandmother, 169  
*o-cha*, tea, 83  
*o-genki de*, Take care of yourself, 190  
*ohairi kudasai*, Do come in, 61  
*oi*, *oigo-san*, nephew, 169  
*oishii*, good, tasty, delicious, 95  
*o-itoko-san*, cousin, 169  
*oji*, *oji-san*, uncle, 169  
*oji-san*, grandfather, 169  
*ojō-san*, daughter, 127, 169  
*okake kudasai*, Do sit down, 61  
*o-kane*, money, 126  
*okāsan*, mother, 91, 169  
*o-kashi*, cake, 95  
*ōkii*, big, large, 48  
*okosan*, child, 127  
*okurimasu*, *okuru*, send, 178

- okusan*, wife, 66, 169  
*o-kyaku-san*, client, customer, guest, 161  
*omachi kudasai*, Please wait, 92  
*omaneki arigatō gozamasu*, Thank you for your invitation, 166  
*omoshiroi*, entertaining, interesting, 100  
*onaka*, stomach, abdomen, 178  
*onegaishimasu*, Please (do) . . . , 88  
*o-nē-san*, older sister, 169  
*ongaku*, music, 83  
*o-nii-san*, older brother, 168, 169  
*onna*, woman, female; *onna no hito*, woman, 32  
*onna no ko*, girl, 68  
*onsen*, hot spring, spa, 179  
*orite*, get off (and); *orimasu*, *oriru*, get off, 130, 145  
*o-sake*, Japanese rice wine, 83  
*oshiemasu*, *oshieru*, tell, show, teach, 90, 91  
*oshimasu*, *osu*, push, 130  
*osoi*, late, slow, 166  
*o-taku*, residence, 88  
*o-tearai*, lavatory, toilet, 69  
*o-tera*, temple, 130  
*otoko*, man, male; *otoko no hito*, man, 58  
*otoko no ko*, boy, 66  
*otōsan*, father, 91, 169  
*otōto*, *otōto-san*, younger brother, 169  
*ototoi*, the day before yesterday, 63  
*otsuri*, change, 142  
*owarimasu*, *owaru*, finish, end, 190
- pan*, bread, 76  
*pan-ya*, bread store, bakery, 76  
*pāti*, party, 36  
*pen*, pen, 61, 151  
*posuto*, mail box, post box, 73  
*pureigaido*, theater booking agency, 79
- raigetsu*, next month, 63  
*rainen*, next year, 56  
*raishū*, next week, 63  
*rajio*, radio, 42  
*rei*, zero, 28  
*rekishi*, history, 110  
*rekōdo*, record, 83  
*reshīto*, receipt, 42  
*resutoran*, restaurant, 80  
*ringo*, apple, 42  
*roku*, six, 28  
*6(roku)-gatsu*, June, 33  
*6(roku)-ji*, 6 o'clock, 32  
*ryokō*, trip, travel, 106; *ryokō o shimasu (suru)*, take a trip, travel, 129, 198  
*ryokō-gaisha*, travel agency, 168  
*ryōri*, food, cooking, cuisine, 106  
*ryōshin*, parents, 169
- sā*, well, let me see, 152, 175  
*-sai*, . . . years old (counter), 127  
*saikin*, nowadays, recently, 190  
*sakana*, fish, 76  
*sakana-ya*, fish shop/seller, 45, 76  
*saka-ya*, liquor store, 76  
*sake*, Japanese rice wine, 83  
*-sama*, Mr., Mrs., Ms., Miss, 143  
*sampo*, a walk; *sampo o shimasu (suru)*, take a walk, 116  
*samukatta*, was cold; *samui*, cold, 104  
*san*, three, 28  
*-san*, Mr., Mrs., Ms., Miss, 19  
*sandoitchi*, sandwich, 83  
*39(sanjūku)-do*, 39 degrees, 180  
*san-nin*, 3 people, 54  
*sanzen-en*, 3, 000 yen, 39  
*sarada*, salad, 83  
*seiji*, politics, 189  
*sen*, one thousand, 41  
*sengetsu*, last month, 57  
*sensei*, teacher, professor, 91, 189  
*senshū*, last week, 54, 56  
*sētā*, sweater, 171  
*setsumei*, explanation, 104  
*shakai*, society, community life, social conditions, 189  
*shashin*, photograph, 68; *shashin o torimasu (toru)*, take a photograph, 150; *shashin o totte mo ii desu ka*, May I take a photograph, 150  
*shi*, four, 28  
*shichi*, seven, 28  
*shidī*, CD, compact disc, 83  
*shigoto*, work, 36; *shigoto o shimasu (suru)*, work, 81  
*shiki*, ceremony, 126  
*shimasu*, *suru*, do, 78  
*shimbun*, newspaper, 29  
*shimemasu*, *shimeru*, close, shut, 121  
*shingō*, traffic light, 139  
*Shinkansen*, Shinkansen, New Trunk Line, 63  
*shinsetsu(na)*, kind, helpful, 100  
*shisha*, branch office, 53  
*shita*, under, beneath, 69  
*shite imasu (iru)*, be doing, 158, 168  
*shitsu*, room, 158  
*shitsurei*, rudeness, 61; *shitsurei shimasu*, May I, Excuse me, I'm sorry, Good-bye, 61, 88  
*shitte imasu (shiru)*, know, 170  
*shizuka(na)*, quiet, calm, 97  
*shokudō*, dining room, cafeteria, lunch room, restaurant, 69, 86  
*shokuji*, meal; *shokuji o shimasu (suru)*, have a meal, eat, 100  
*shōshō*, a moment, 92

*shujin*, husband, 169  
*-shūkan*, weeks (counter), 134  
*shūmatsu*, weekend, 78  
*shutchō*, business trip, 53; *shutchō desu ka*, Is it a business trip (you're going on), 53  
*sōbetsukai*, farewell party, 119  
*sobo*, grandmother, 169  
*sochira*, there, that way, that person, 199  
*sō desu*, That's right, 26  
*sō desu ka*, I see, 88  
*sō desu nē*, Let me see, 180  
*sofu*, grandfather, 169  
*soko*, there, that place, 76  
*sono*, that, 44, 46  
*sore*, that (one), 39, 46  
*sorekara*, and, and then, after that, 45, 130  
*soshite*, and then, 53  
*subarashii*, wonderful, 152  
*suimasu, suu*, smoke, inhale, 155  
*sui-yōbi*, Wednesday, 35  
*suki*, skiing, 114  
*suki(na)*, like, likeable, favorite, 109  
*sukiyaki*, sukiyaki, 183  
*sukoshi*, a little, 134  
*sukunai*, a little, 191  
*sumimasen*, Excuse me, I'm sorry, 32, 155  
*sunde imasu*, live, is living; *sumimasu, sumu*, live, 168  
*sūpā*, supermarket, 73  
*sūpu*, soup, 83  
*supūn*, spoon, 117  
*suraido*, slide, 158  
*suwanaide kudasai*, Do not smoke, 155  
  
*tabako*, tobacco, cigarette, 155  
*tabemashita*, ate; *tabemasu, taberu*, eat, 80  
*-tachi*, (plural suffix for people), 100  
*taipu*, typing, 89, 138; *taipu o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
*taishikan*, embassy, 23  
*takai*, expensive, high, 100  
*takusan*, many, lots of, 74  
*takushī*, taxi, 61  
*takushī-noriba*, taxi stand, 74  
*tamago*, egg, 100  
*tana*, shelf, 68  
*tanjōbi*, birthday, 33  
*tanoshii*, enjoyable, 106  
*tanoshimi ni shite imasu (iru)*, be looking forward to, 190  
*tansu*, chest of drawers, 174  
*tatemono*, building, 74  
*tēburu*, table, 66  
*tegami*, letter, 83  
*tekisuto*, text, 190  
*temae*, just before, this side of, 142  
*ten*, (decimal) point, 41

*ten'in*, store clerk, 39  
*tenisu*, tennis, 83; *tenisu o shimasu (suru)*, play tennis, 81, 198  
*tenki*, weather, 101  
*tēpu*, tape, 48  
*tēpurekōdā*, tape recorder, 42  
*terebi*, television, TV set, 42  
*to*, and (particle), 66  
*to*, with (particle), 53  
*tō*, ten, 45  
*todana*, closet, cabinet, cupboard, 68  
*todokemashō ka*, Shall we deliver; *todokemasu, todokeru*, deliver, 137  
*tōi*, far, 97  
*tōka*, 10th day of the month, 35  
*tokei*, clock, watch, 27  
*tokidoki*, sometimes, 86  
*tokoro*, place, 189  
*tomato*, tomato, 179  
*tomete kudasai*, Please stop, 142; *tomemasu, tomeru*, park, stop, 138, 154; *tomenaide kudasai*, Do not park, 154  
*tomodachi*, friend, 57  
*tonari*, next to, 73  
*torimasu, toru*, take, 150  
*tori-niku*, chicken meat, 100  
*toshokan*, library, 178  
*totemo*, very, 95  
*tsugi*, next, 138  
*tsugō*, condition, 117; *tsugō ga warui desu*, conditions are unfavorable, 114, 117  
*tsuitachi*, 1st day of the month, 35  
*tsukatte mo ii desu*, You may use it; *tsukaimasu, tsukau*, use, 150  
*tsukete mo ii desu ka*, May I turn (it) on, 149; *tsukemasu, tsukeru*, switch/turn on, 121  
*tsukimashita*, arrived; *tsukimasu, tsuku*, arrive, 146  
*tsukue*, desk, table, 174  
*tsukurimashita*, made, formed; *tsukurimasu, tsukuru*, form, make, build, 189  
*tsumaranai*, boring, uninteresting, 98  
*tsumetai*, cold, 191  
*tsutomete imasu*, be employed, work for; *tsutomemasu, tsutomeru*, serve, work for, 168  
  
*uchi*, home, house, 26, 88  
*ue*, top, 66  
*ueitoresu*, waitress, 139  
*uketsuke*, reception, 70  
*umi*, sea, ocean, 117  
*untenshu*, driver, 142  
*-uriba*, selling place, 76  
*urusai*, noisy, 121  
*utte imasu*, sell, is selling; *urimasu, uru*, sell, 170

*wa* (topic marker, particle), 19  
*wain*, wine, 166  
*wakarimashita*, Sure, Certainly, I see, 89, 114  
*wakarimashita*, understood; *wakarimasu*,  
*wakaru*, understand, 73, 104, 174  
*warui*, bad, 97  
*watashi*, I, 19  
*watashi no*, my, 26  
*watashi-tachi*, we, 100

*-ya*, store, shop, clerk, seller, 44  
*ya*, and (etc.), 66  
*yama*, mountain, 178  
*yaoya*, vegetable store, greengrocer, 76  
*yasai*, vegetable, 100  
*yasashii*, easy, 100  
*yasui*, inexpensive, cheap, 100  
*yasumi*, rest (period), vacation, holiday, day  
off, closing day, 33, 76, 126  
*yattsu*, eight, 48  
*yo*, I tell you (particle), 73  
*-yōbi*, day of the week, 33  
*yobimasu*, *yobu*, call, 130  
*yoi*, good, 98  
*yōka*, 8th day of the month, 35  
*yokka*, 4th day of the month, 35

*yoku*, well, 61  
*yoku*, often, 89  
*yoku irasshaimashita*, How nice of you to  
come, 61  
*yokunai*, not good, 97  
*yomimasu*, *yomu*, read, 79, 83  
*yon*, four, 28  
*4(yon)-shūkan*, 4 weeks, 134  
*yorokonde (yorokobu)*, (I'd) love/be happy to,  
gladly, with pleasure, 114, 166  
*Yōroppa*, Europe, 176  
*yoroshiku*, regards, 21, 190  
*yotstu*, four, 48  
*yoyaku*, reservation, 143  
*yūbinkyoku*, post office, 36  
*yūgata*, late afternoon, early evening, 147  
*yukkuri*, slowly, 139  
*yūmei(na)*, famous, well known, 95, 100

*zannen(na)*, regrettable; *zannen desu ga*, I'm  
sorry, but . . . , 114, 116  
*zasshi*, magazine, 83  
*zahi*, by all means, 114, 119  
*zenzen . . . -masen*, never (do), 91  
*zenzen . . . -masen*, not at all, 104  
*zero*, zero, 26, 28

# ENGLISH-JAPANESE GLOSSARY

Note: Idiomatic expressions have been omitted, as well as counters, particles that have no independent meaning and words listed in some appendices. Since equivalents differ in nuance, refer to the pages listed to check context and usage.

about, *goro*, 86, 89; *gurai*, 101, 145  
 about (concerning), *ni tsuite*, 174  
 aching, *itai*, 176  
 address, *jūsho*, 29  
 after, (*no*) *ato de*, 132  
 afternoon (p.m.), *gogo*, 32  
 after that, *sorekara*, 130  
 afterwards, *ato de*, 88  
 again, *mata*, 88  
 airmail, *kōkūbin*, 180  
 airplane, *hikōki*, 76  
 airport, *kūkō*, 57  
 a little, *chotto*, 127; *sukoshi*, 134; *sukunai*, 191  
 alone, *hitori de*, 53  
 already, *mō*, 79, 96  
 and, *to*, 66; and (etc.), *ya*, 66  
 and then, *sorekara*, 45; *soshite*, 53  
 apple, *ringo*, 42  
 approximately, *gurai*, 101, 145  
 arm, *ude*, 193  
 arrive, *tsukimasu (tsuku)*, 146  
 as far as, *made*, 145  
 ashtray, *haizara*, 42  
 ask, *kikimasu (kiku)*, 90, 91  
 at, *ni*, 66; *de*, 79  
 aunt, *oba*, *oba-san*, 169

baby, *akachan*, 117  
 back, *senaka*, 193  
 bad, *warui*, 97  
 bakery, *pan-ya*, 76  
 banana, *banana*, 20  
 bank, *ginkō*, 23  
 basement, *chika*, 170  
 battery, *denchi*, 46  
 be able, *dekimasu (dekiru)*, 174, 176  
 because, *kara*, 73  
 beef, *gyū-niku*, 100  
 beer, *biru*, 49  
 before, *mae*, 68; (*no*) *mae ni*, 133  
 begin, *hajimeru*, 25  
 be married, *kekkon shite iru*, 168  
 beneath, *shita*, 69  
 beverage, *nomimono*, 174, 183  
 big, *ōkii*, 48  
 birthday, *tanjōbi*, 33

black, *kuroi*, 50  
 black tea, *kōcha*, 83  
 blue, *aoi*, 50  
 body, *karada*, 193  
 book, *hon*, 29  
 book store/seller, *hon-ya*, 45, 74  
 boring, *tsumaranai*, 98  
 box, *hako*, 68  
 boy, *otoko no ko*, 66  
 branch office, *shisha*, 53  
 bread, *pan*, 76  
 breakfast, *asa-gohan*, 83  
 bright, *akarui*, 191  
 bring, *mottekimasu (mottekuru)*, 137  
 brothers/sisters, *kyōdai*, 126, 169  
 brown, *chairoi*, *chairo no*, 191  
 build, *tsukurimasu (tsukuru)*, 189  
 building, *biru*, 70; *tatemono*, 74  
 bus, *basu*, 57  
 business card, *meishi*, 26  
 business trip, *shutchō*, 53  
 bus terminal, *basu-noriba*, 76  
 busy, *isogashii*, 100  
 but, *ga*, 86; *demo*, 121  
 butcher, *niku-ya*, 76  
 buy, *kaimasu (kau)*, 79  
 by, *de*, 61; *made ni*, 137  
 by all means, *zahi*, 114, 119

cabinet, *todana*, 68  
 café, *kissaten*, 83  
 cafeteria, *shokudō*, 86  
 cake, *kēki*, 139; *o-kashi*, 95  
 call, *yobimasu (yobu)*, 130  
 calm, *shizuka(na)*, 97  
 camera, *kamera*, 44  
 camera store/clerk, *kamera-ya*, 44  
 can, *dekimasu (dekiru)*, 174, 176  
 car, *kuruma*, 29  
 catalogue, *katarogu*, 150  
 CD (compact disk), *shīdī*, 83  
 ceremony, *shiki*, 126  
 chair, *isu*, 66  
 change, *otsuri*, 142  
 cheap, *yasui*, 100  
 cheek, *hoho*, 193  
 chest, *mune*, 193  
 chest of drawers, *tansu*, 174  
 chicken (meat), *tori-niku*, 100  
 child, *ko*, 66; *kodomo*, 69, 169; *okosan*, 127  
 chin, *ago*, 193  
 Christmas card, *kurisumasu kado*, 91  
 cigarette, *tabako*, 155

- class, *jugyō*, 126  
 clean, *kirei(na)*, 95  
 client, *o-kyaku-san*, 161  
 clock, *tokei*, 27  
 close, *shimeru*, 121  
 close, *chikai*, 98  
 close (to), (*no*) *chikaku ni/de*, 68  
 closet, *todana*, 68  
 coffee, *kōhī*, 83  
 coffee shop, *kissaten*, 83  
 cold, *samui*, 104; *tsumetai*, 191  
 color, *iro*, 108  
 come, *kimasu (kuru)*, 56  
 come back, *kaerimasu (kaeru)*, 53  
 come in, *hairimasu (hairu)*, 61, 150  
 company, *kaisha*, 26  
 concerning, *ni tsuite*, 174  
 condition, *tsugō*, 117  
 conference, *kaigi*, 36  
 conference room, *kaigi-shitsu*, 158  
 convenient, *benri(na)*, 100  
 cookie, *kukki*, 96  
 cooking, *ryōri*, 106  
 cool, *suzushii*, 191  
 corner, *kado*, 138  
 correct, *tadashii*, 191  
 cost, *kakarimasu (kaku)*, 145, 146  
 cousin, *itoko, o-itoko-san*, 169  
 crowded (be), *komimasu (komu)*, 189  
 cuisine, *ryōri*, 106  
 culture, *bunka*, 189  
 cup, *koppu*, 117  
 cupboard, *todana*, 68  
 customer, *o-kyaku-san*, 161
- dangerous, *abunai*, 191  
 dark, *kurai*, 121  
 daughter, *musume, musume-san*, 127, 169; *ojo-san*, 127, 169  
 day, *hi*, 166; *-nichi*, 33  
 day after tomorrow, *asatte*, 53  
 day before yesterday, *ototoi*, 63  
 day off, *yasumi*, 126  
 daytime, *hiru*, 33  
 decimal point, *ten*, 41  
 degree, *-do*, 180  
 delicious, *oishii*, 95  
 deliver, *todokemasu (todokeru)*, 137  
 department store, *depāto*, 32  
 desk, *tsukue*, 174  
 dessert, *dezāto*, 183  
 dictionary, *jisho*, 110  
 difficult, *muzukashii*, 100  
 dining room, *shokudō*, 69  
 dinner, *ban-gohan*, 83  
 dirty, *kitanai*, 191  
 do, *shimasu (suru)*, 78
- doctor, *isha*, 180  
 door, *doa*, 121  
 draw, *kakimasu (kaku)*, 89  
 drink, *nomimasu (nomu)*, 81, 83  
 drink, *nomimono*, 174, 183  
 drive, *unten o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
 drive, driving, *doraibu*, 116  
 driver, *untenshu*, 142  
 drug store, *kusuri-ya*, 76  
 dry clean, *kurīningu o shimasu (suru)* 198  
 dry cleaner, *kurīningu-ya*, 143  
 dry cleaning, *kurīningu*, 143
- ear, *mimi*, 193  
 early, *hayai*, 191  
 earphones, *iyahōn*, 61, 104  
 east, *higashi*, 53  
 easy, *yasashii*, 100  
 eat, *itadakimasu (itadaku)*, 95, 96; *tabemasu (taberu)*, 80  
 economy, *keizai*, 189  
 egg, *tamago*, 100  
 eight, *hachi*, 28; *yattsu*, 48  
 electrical appliance store/clerk, *denki-ya*, 150  
 embassy, *taishikan*, 22  
 employed (be), *tsutomemasu (tsutomeru)*, 168  
 employee (company), *kaishain*, 23  
 end, *owarimasu (owaru)*, 190  
 English, *Ei-go*, 104  
 enjoyable, *tanoshii*, 106  
 enter, *hairimasu (hairu)*, 61, 150  
 entertaining, *omoshiroi*, 100  
 entrance, *iriguchi*, 76  
 entrance hall, *genkan*, 68  
 Europe, *Yōroppa*, 176  
 evening (early), *yugata*, 147  
 evening meal, *ban-gohan*, 83  
 everyone, *mina-sama*, 190; *minna, mina-san*, 166  
 exit, *deguchi*, 156  
 expensive, *takai*, 100  
 explain, *setsumei o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
 explanation, *setsumei*, 104  
 extension number, *naisen-bangō*, 91  
 eye, *me*, 193  
 eyebrow, *mayu, mayuge*, 93  
 eyeglasses, *megane*, 76  
 eyelash, *matsuge*, 193  
 eyelid, *mabuta*, 193
- family, *kazoku*, 83  
 famous, *yumei(na)*, 95, 100  
 far, *tōi*, 97  
 farewell party, *sōbetsukai*, 119  
 fast, *hayai*, 191  
 father, *chichi*, 110; *otōsan*, 91, 169  
 favorite, *suki(na)*, 109

feeling, *kibun*, 180  
 festival, *matsuri*, 179  
 fever, *netsu*, 180  
 few, *sukunai*, 191  
 film, *fuirumu*, 39, 45  
 film (movie), *eiga*, 36  
 finger, *yubi*, 193  
 finish, *owarimasu (owaru)*, 190  
 finished (be), *dekimasu (dekiru)*, 143  
 fish, *sakana*, 76  
 fish shop/seller, *sakana-ya*, 45, 76  
 five, *go*, 28; *itsutsu*, 49  
 florist, *hana-ya*, 45  
 flower, *hana*, 66  
 flower shop, *hana-ya*, 45  
 foot, *ashi*, 193  
 forehead, *hitai*, 193  
 foreign country, *gaikoku*, 171  
 four, *shi*, *yon*, 28; *yottsu*, 48  
 free, *hima(na)*, 100  
 fresh, *atarashii*, 100  
 Friday, *kin-yōbi*, 33, 35  
 friend, *tomodachi*, 57  
 from, *kara*, 32, 56  
 fruit, *kudamono*, 179  
 furniture, *kagu*, 174  
  
 garden, *niwa*, 66  
 get off, *orimasu (oriru)*, 130, 145  
 get on, *norimasu (noru)*, 145  
 girl, *onna no ko*, 68  
 give, *agemasu (ageru)*, 109; *kuremasu (kureru)*, 109  
 give a party, *pati o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
 glass, *koppu*, 117  
 glasses (eyeglasses), *megane*, 76  
 go, *ikimasu (iku)*, 53  
 go back, *kaerimasu (kaeru)*, 53  
 go driving/for a drive, *doraibu o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
 go in, *hairimasu (hairu)*, 61  
 golf, *gorufu*, 106  
 good, *ii*, 79; *yoi*, 98  
 good at, *jozu(na)*, 176  
 grandchild, *mago*, 169  
 grandfather, *ojī-san*, 169; *sofu*, 169  
 grandmother, *obā-san*, 169; *sobo*, 169  
 green, *midoriro no*, 191  
 greengrocer, *yaoya*, 76  
 group, *gurūpu*, 189  
 guest, *o-kyaku-san*, 161  
  
 hair, *kami*, 193  
 half, *han*, 30  
 hand, *te*, 193  
 hard, *muzukashii*, 100  
 have, *arimasu (aru)*, 124

have a headache, *atama ga itai*, 176  
 have a meal, *shokuji o shimasu (suru)*, 100  
 head, *atama*, 176  
 healthy, *genki(na)*, 100  
 hear, *kikimasu (kiku)*, 83  
 heater, *hitā*, 121  
 heavy, *omoi*, 191  
 hello, *moshi moshi*, 88  
 helpful, *shinsetsu(na)*, 100  
 here, *kochira*, 61; *koko*, 76  
 high, *takai*, 100  
 hiking, *haikingu*, 117  
 hip, *koshi*, 193  
 history, *rekishi*, 110  
 hold a meeting, *kaigi o shimasu (suru)*, 86  
 holiday, *yasumi*, 76  
 home, *uchi*, 26  
 hospital, *byōin*, 74  
 hot (temperature), *atsui*, 104; (spicy) *karai*, 191  
 hot spring, *onsen*, 179  
 hotel, *hoteru*, 91  
 house, *uchi*, 26, 88  
 how, *dō*, 103; *dōyatte*, 145; *ikaga*, 95; *nani/nan de*, 62, 63  
 how long, *donogurai*, 134  
 how many, *ikutsu*, 46, 76  
 how much, *donogurai*, 146; *ikura*, 39  
 husband, *go-shujin*, 88; *shujin*, 169  
  
 I, *watashi*, 19  
 ice cream, *aisukurimu*, 184  
 important, *daiji(na)*, 191  
 in, *ni*, 66  
 inconvenient, *fuben(na)*, 191  
 inexpensive, *yasui*, 100  
 in front of, *mae*, 68; (no) *mae ni*, 133  
 inside, *naka*, 68  
 interesting, *omoshiroi*, 100  
 intersection, *kōsaten*, 139  
 introduce, *shōkai o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
 is/are (animate), *imasu (iru)*, 66  
 is/are (inanimate), *arimasu (aru)*, 20, 66  
  
 Japanese rice wine, *sake, o-sake*, 83  
 jaw, *ago*, 193  
 jog, *jogingu o shimasu (suru)*, 92  
 juice, *jūsu*, 83  
 just before, *temae*, 142  
  
 key, *kagi*, 29  
 kind, *shinsetsu(na)*, 100  
 kitchen, *daidokoro*, 66  
 know, *shirimasu (shiru)*, 170  
  
 large, *ōkii*, 48  
 late, *osoi*, 166  
 late afternoon, *yūgata*, 147

later, *ato de*, 88  
lavatory, *o-tearai*, 69  
lawyer, *bengoshi*, 19  
leave, *demasu (deru)*, 146  
left, *hidari*, 139  
left-hand side, *hidari-gawa*, 155  
leg, *ashi*, 193  
lesson, *jugyō*, 126  
letter, *tegami*, 83  
library, *toshokan*, 178  
light, *karui*, 191  
light (electric), *denki*, 121  
likable, *suki(na)*, 109  
lip, *kuchibiru*, 193  
liquor store, *saka-ya*, 76  
listen, *kikimasu (kiku)*, 83  
live, *sumimasu (sumu)*, 168  
lively, *nigiyaka(na)*, 99, 104  
living room, *ima*, 66  
long, *nagai*, 191  
look at, *mimasu (miru)*, 78, 130  
look forward to, *tanoshimi ni shite imasu*, 190  
lots of, *takusan*, 74  
low, *hikui*, 191  
lunch, *hiru-gohan*, 80  
lunch time, *hiru-yasumi*, 33

mail box, *posuto*, 73  
magazine, *zasshi*, 83  
make, *tsukurimasu (tsukuru)*, 189  
make a phone call, *denwa o shimasu (suru)*, 79, 89  
make a reservation, *yoyaku o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
man, *otoko, otoko no hito*, 58  
many, *takusan*, 74; *ōi*, 191  
map, *chizu*, 83  
marriage, *kekkon*, 126  
marry, *kekkon shimasu (suru)*, 168  
meal, *gohan*, 80; *shokuji*, 100  
meat, *niku*, 76  
meat store, *niku-ya*, 76  
medicine, *kusuri*, 76  
meet, *aimasu (au)*, 89  
meeting, *kaigi*, 36  
meeting room, *kaigi-shitsu*, 158  
melon, *meron*, 183  
menu, *menyū*, 139  
milk, *miruku*, 83  
minute, *-fun (-pun)*, 32  
Monday, *getsu-yōbi*, 35  
money, *o-kane*, 126  
month(s), *-gatsu*, 33  
morning, *asa*, 83  
morning (a.m.), *gozen*, 33  
mother, *haha, okāsan*, 91  
mountain, *yama*, 178

mouth, *kuchi*, 193  
movie, *eiga*, 36  
much, *ōi*, 191  
mug, *koppu*, 117  
music, *ongaku*, 83  
my, *watashi no*, 26

nail, *tsume*, 193  
name, *namae*, 26  
narrow, *semai*, 191  
near, *chikai*, 98; (*no*) *chikaku ni/de*, 68  
neck, *kubi*, 193  
necktie, *nekutai*, 110  
nephew, *oi, oigo-san*, 169  
never (do) . . . , *zenzen . . . -masen*, 91  
new, *atarashii*, 100  
news, *nyūsu*, 83  
New Year's card, *nengajō*, 91  
newspaper, *shimbun*, 29  
next, *tsugi*, 138  
next to, *tonari*, 73  
niece, *mei, meigo-san*, 169  
nine, *kyū, ku*, 28; *kokonotsu*, 48  
no, *ie*, 20, 23  
nobody, *dare mo . . . -masen*, 66  
no good, *dame*, 155; *dame(na)*, 191  
noisy, *urusai*, 121  
noon, *hiru*, 33  
no parking, *chūsha kinshi*, 154  
nose, *hana*, 193  
not at all, *zenzen . . . -masen*, 104  
not good, *yokunai*, 98  
nothing, *nani mo*, 69  
not often, *amari . . . -masen*, 89  
not very, *amari*, 97  
not yet, *mada desu*, 143  
now, *ima*, 32  
nowadays, *saikin*, 190  
nowhere, *doko ni mo*, 67  
number, *bangō*, 26

ocean, *umi*, 117  
often, *yoku*, 89  
old, *furui*, 100  
older brother, *ani, o-nii-san*, 168, 169  
older sister, *ane*, 110; *o-nē-san*, 169  
on, *ni*, 61, 145  
once, *ichi-do*, 137  
one, *ichi*, 28; *hitotsu*, 47  
one hundred, *hyaku*, 33, 41  
one thousand, *sen*, 41  
one time, *ichi-do*, 137  
only, *dake*, 130  
open, *akemasu (akeru)*, 120; open, *hirakimasu (hiraku)*, 32  
other, *hoka*, 189  
over there, *asoko*, 70; *achira*, 199

- painful, *itai*, 176  
 parcel, *nimotsu*, 180  
 parents, *ryōshin*, *go-ryōshin*, 169  
 park, *kōen*, 95, 100  
 park, *tomemasu (tomeru)*, 138, 142, 154  
 parking lot, *chūshajō*, 155  
 part, *bun*, 41  
 party, *pāti*, 36  
 pen, *pen*, 61, 151  
 person, *hito*, 32  
 pharmacy, *kusuri-ya*, 76  
 photocopy, *kopī*, *kopī o shimasu (suru)*, 120  
 photograph, *shashin*, 68  
 picture, *e*, 83  
 place, *tokoro*, 189  
 play golf, *gorufu o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
 play tennis, *tenisu o shimasu (suru)*, 81, 198  
 pleasant, *tanoshii*, 191  
 police box, *kōban*, 76  
 policeman, *keikan*, 154  
 polite, *teinei(na)*, 191  
 politics, *seiji*, 189  
 postage stamp, *kitte*, 49  
 post box, *posuto*, 73  
 postcard, *hagaki*, 68  
 post office, *yūbinkyoku*, 36  
 pretty, *kirei(na)*, 95  
 professor, *sensei*, 91, 189  
 purple, *murasaki no*, 191  
 push, *oshimasu (osu)*, 130  
  
 quiet, *shizuka(na)*, 97  
  
 radio, *rajio*, 42  
 read, *yomimasu (yomu)*, 79, 83  
 really, *hontō ni*, 101  
 receipt, *reshito*, 42  
 receive, *moraimasu (morau)*, 108, 109  
 recently, *saikin*, 190  
 reception, *uketsuke*, 70  
 record, *rekōdo*, 83  
 red, *akai*, 48  
 reservation, *yoyaku*, 143; make a reservation,  
*yoyaku o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
 residence, *o-taku*, 88  
 rest (period), *yasumi*, 33  
 restaurant, *resutoran*, 80; *shokudō*, 69, 86  
 return, *kaerimasu (kaeru)*, 53  
 ride, *norimasu (noru)*, 145  
 right, *migi*, 138  
 room, *heya*, 76; *shitsu*, 158  
 rude, *shitsurei(na)*, 191  
  
 safe, *anzen(na)*, 191  
 salad, *sarada*, 83  
 salty, *shiokarai*, 191  
  
 sandwich, *sandoitchi*, 83  
 Saturday, *do-yōbi*, 35  
 say, *iimasu (iu)*, 137  
 school, *gakkō*, 29  
 sea, *umi*, 117  
 sea mail, *funabin*, 61, 180  
 secretary, *hisho*, 23  
 see, *mimasu (miru)*, 78, 130  
 sell, *urimasu (uru)*, 170  
 send, *okurimasu (okuru)*, 178  
 seven, *nana*, *shichi*, 28; *nanatsu*, 48  
 shabu-shabu, *shabushabu*, 183  
 shelf, *tana*, 68  
 shoes, *kutsu*, 83  
 shop, *kaimono o shimasu (suru)*, 81  
 shop, *mise*, 91  
 shopping, *kaimono*, 83  
 short, *mijikai*, 191  
 shoulder, *kata*, 193  
 show, *misemasu (miseru)*, 39; *oshiemasu*  
*(oshieru)*, 90, 91  
 show case, *kēsu*, 150  
 shut, *shimemasu (shimeru)*, 121  
 siblings, *kyōdai*, 126, 169  
 sisters/brothers, *kyōdai*, 126, 169  
 sit, *kakemasu (kakeru)*, 61  
 six, *roku*, 28; *muttsu*, 48  
 ski, *suki o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
 skiing, *sukī*, 114  
 skillful, *jōzu(na)*, 176  
 skin, *hifu*, 193  
 slide, *suraido*, 158  
 slow, *osoi*, 166  
 slowly, *yukkuri*, 139  
 small, *chiisai*, 44  
 smoke, *tabako o suimasu (suu)*, 155  
 so, *kara*, 73  
 society, *shakai*, 189  
 socks, *kutsushita*, 179  
 sometimes, *tokidoki*, 86  
 son, *musuko*, *musuko-san*, 127, 169; *botchan*,  
 169  
 soup, *sūpu*, 83  
 sour, *suppai*, 191  
 spa, *onsen*, 179  
 speak, *iimasu (iu)*, 137  
 spicy, *karai*, 191  
 spoon, *supūn*, 117  
 start, *demasu (deru)*, 146  
 station, *eki*, 56  
 stay, *imasu (iru)*, 130  
 stomach, *onaka*, 178  
 stop, *tomemasu (tomeru)*, 138, 142, 154  
 store, *mise*, 91  
 store clerk, *ten'in*, 39  
 straight ahead, *massugu*, 142  
 student, *gakusei*, 23

- study, *benkyō o shimasu (suru)*, 80  
 subway, *chikatetsu*, 57  
 sukiyaki, *sukiyaki*, 183  
 summer, *natsu*, 37  
 summer vacation, *natsu-yasumi*, 37  
 Sunday, *nichi-yōbi*, 35  
 superintendent, *kanrinin*, 73  
 supermarket, *sūpā*, 73  
 sweater, *sētā*, 171  
 sweet, *amai*, 191  
 switchboard operator, *kōkanshu*, 92
- table, *tēburu*, 66  
 take, *torimasu (toru)*, 150  
 take (get on), *norimasu (noru)*, 145  
 take (medicine), *nomimasu (nomu)*, 81, 83  
 take (time), *kakarimasu (kakaruru)*, 145, 146  
 take a photograph, *shashin o torimasu (toru)*,  
 150  
 take a trip, *ryokō o shimasu (suru)*, 129  
 take a walk, *sampo o shimasu (suru)*, 116  
 talk, *hanashi o shimasu (suru)*, 161  
 tangerine, *mikan*, 49  
 tape, *tēpu*, 49  
 tape recorder, *tēpurekōdā*, 42  
 tasty, *oishii*, 95  
 taxi, *takushī*, 61  
 taxi stand, *takushī-noriba*, 74  
 tea, *cha, o-cha*, 83  
 teach, *oshiemasu (oshieru)*, 90, 91  
 teacher, *sensei*, 91  
 telephone, *denwa*, 26; *denwa o shimasu*  
*(suru)*, 79, 89  
 telephone number, *denwa-bangō*, 26  
 telephone operator, *kōkanshu*, 92  
 television, *terebi*, 42  
 tell, *oshiemasu (oshieru)*, 90, 91  
 temple, *o-tera*, 130  
 ten, *jū*, 28; *to*, 45  
 tennis, *tenisu*, 83  
 text, *tekisuto*, 190  
 Thank you very much, *dōmo arigatō goza-*  
*imasu*, 26  
 thanks, *dōmo*, 142, 159  
 that, *sono*, 44, 46  
 that (one), *sore*, 39, 46  
 that (one) over there, *are*, 40, 46  
 that (over there), *ano*, 46, 48  
 that place, *soko*, 76  
 that place (over there), *asoko*, 70  
 theater booking agency, *pureigaido*, 79  
 then, *soshite*, 53  
 there, *soko*, 76; *sochira*, 199  
 thing, *koto*, 174  
 this, *kono*, 46, 47  
 this (one), *kore*, 26, 39, 46  
 this direction, *kochira*, 61  
 this person, *kochira*, 19, 21  
 this place, *koko*, 76  
 this side of, *temae*, 142  
 this way, *kochira*, 61  
 three, *san*, 28; *mittsu*, 45  
 throat, *nodo*, 178  
 Thursday, *moku-yōbi*, 33, 35  
 ticket, *kippu*, 76  
 ticket gate, *kaisatsuguchi*, 76  
 ticket office, *kippu-uriba*, 76  
 time, *jikan*, 124  
 -times, *-do*, 137  
 to, *e*, 53  
 to, *made*, 145  
 to, *ni*, 53, 79, 88, 108, 109, 114, 115  
 tobacco, *tabako*, 155  
 today, *kyō*, 33  
 toe, *yubi*, 193  
 together (with), *issho ni*, 114  
 toilet, *o-tearai*, 69  
 tomato, *tomato*, 179  
 tomorrow, *ashita*, 33  
 tongue, *shita*, 193  
 tonight, *komban*, 83  
 too, *mo*, 39  
 tooth, *ha*, 178  
 top, *ue*, 66  
 town, *machi*, 106, 137  
 traffic light, *shingō*, 139  
 train (electric), *densha*, 56  
 travel, *ryokō o shimasu (suru)*, 129  
 travel agency, *ryokō-gaisha*, 168  
 tree, *ki*, 101  
 trip, *ryokō*, 106  
 truly, *hontō ni*, 101  
 Tuesday, *ka-yōbi*, 35  
 turn, *magarimasu (magaru)*, 138  
 turn off, *keshimasu (kesu)*, 121  
 turn on, *tsukemasu (tsukeru)*, 121  
 TV set, *terebi*, 42  
 two, *ni*, 28; *futatsu*, 49  
 type, *taipu o shimasu (suru)*, 198  
 typing, *taipu*, 89, 138
- umbrella, *kasa*, 39, 42  
 uncle, *oji, oji-san*, 169  
 under, *shita*, 69  
 underground, *chika*, 170  
 underground railway, *chikatetsu*, 57  
 understand, *wakarimasu (wakaru)*, 73  
 uninteresting, *tsumaranai*, 98  
 unkind, *fushinsetsu(na)*, 191  
 unlikeable, *kirai(na)*, 191  
 unskillful, *heta(na)*, 191  
 until, *made*, 32  
 use, *tsukaimasu (tsukau)*, 150  
 useless, *dame*, 155

vacation, *yasumi*, 126  
various, *iroiro(na)*, 174  
vase, *kabin*, 108  
vegetable, *yasai*, 100  
vegetable store, *yaoya*, 76  
vehicle, *kuruma*, 29  
very, *totemo*, 95  
very much, *dōmo*, 26  
very soon, *mō sugu*, 190  
video, *bideo*, 121  
  
wait, *machimasu (matsu)*, 92  
waitress, *weitoresu*, 139  
walk, *sampo*, 116; *arukimasu (aruku)*, 145  
warm, *ataakai*, 191  
watch, *mimasu (miru)*, 78, 130  
watch, *tokei*, 27  
water, *mizu*, 42  
way of thinking, *kangaekata*, 189  
we, *watashi-tachi*, 100  
weather, *tenki*, 101  
wedding, *kekkon-shiki*, 126  
Wednesday, *sui-yōbi*, 35  
weekend, *shūmatsu*, 78  
welcome party, *kangeikai*, 121  
well, *genki(na)*, 100  
well known, *yūmei(na)*, 95, 100  
what, *nani/nan*, 27, 29  
what kind of, *donna*, 96, 100

when, *itsu*, 32, 36  
where, *doko*, 48, 80; *dochira*, 119  
which, *dono*, 50  
which one, *dore*, 44  
white, *shiroi*, 191  
who, *dare*, 21; *donata*, 21, 23  
whose, *dare no*, 29  
why, *dōshite*, 73, 76  
wide, *hiro*, 191  
wife, *kanai*, 111, 169; *okusan*, 66, 169  
window, *mado*, 68  
wine, *wain*, 166  
with, *to*, 53  
woman, *onna*, *onna no hito*, 32  
wonderful, *subarashii*, 152  
work, *shigoto*, 36; *shigoto o shimasu (suru)*, 81  
write, *kakimasu (kaku)*, 89  
wrong, *chigau*, 92  
  
yen, *en*, 39  
yellow, *kiroi*, *kiro no*, 191  
yes, *ee*, 26; *hai*, 23  
yesterday, *kinō*, 33  
you, *anata*, 21, 23  
young, *wakai*, 191  
younger brother, *otōto*, *otōto-san*, 169  
younger sister, *imōto*, *imōto-san*, 126, 169  
  
zero, *rei*, 28; *zero*, 26, 28

# INDEX

abbreviated expression, 26, 115; verb replaced by *desu*, 32, 53, 67, 73

address, 137

adjective, *-i* adj., 95, 97, 105; like/dislike, 174; *-na* adj., 95, 99, 105; present/past form, 95, 105, 176

connective, *ga*, 86, 88; *sorekara*, 45; *soshite*, 53, 55

counter, *-ban*, 29; *-do*, 137, 180; *-fun*, 32; *-gatsu*, 33; *-hai*, 95; *-hon*, 45, 49; *-ji*, 32; *-jikan*, 132; *ka*, 35; *-kai*, 68; *-kagetsu*, 180, *-kan*, 132; *-kiro*, 49; *-mai*, 45, 49; *-nen*, 63; *-nichi*, 33; *-nin*, 74; *-sai*, 127; *-shūkan*, 134

counter, word order, 46

day of the month, 32, 33, 35

day of the week, 32, 33, 35

decimals, 41

*desu* (*deshita*), 20, 54

*dewa/ya arimasen* (*deshita*), 21, 33

fractions, 41

here, there, over there, 46, 70, 76

honorific, *go-*, 88; *o-*, 69, 88; *-sama*, 143; *-san*, 19, 21; *sensei*, 189

indirect object marker, *ni*, 79, 109

interjection, *a*, 53; *dewa/ya*, 39, 42; *sā*, 152, 175

is/are (animate), 66, 68; (inanimate), 20, 66, 68

Model Verb Conjugation, 130

month, 35

name (instead of I/you), 21, 26

negative question, 20

nobody, nothing, nowhere, 67

numbers, 26, 45; *hitotsu*, *futatsu*, *mittsu*, 48; intermediate numbers, 33, 41; one hundred/one trillion, 41; twenty/one hundred, 33; zero/twenty, 28

object marker, *o*, 39, 55, 79, 109, 120, 145, 175

omission of topic, 20

particle, *dake*, 130; *de*, 53, 54; *de* (at), 79, 80, 145; *de* (by), 61; *ga* (but), 86; *ga*, 88; *kara* (because), 73; *kara* (from) 32, 56; *made* (as far as), 145; *made* (by), 32, 137; *mo*, 39, 55; *ne*, 70, 73, 80; *nié*, 53; *ni* (in), 66; *ni* (on) 61, 115, 145; *ni* (to), 53, 54, 88, 114, 115; *ni sumu/sutomeru*, 168, 169; *o* (from), 146; *to*

(and), 66, 67; *to* (with), 53; *ya*, 66, 67; *yo*, 73. See also, indirect object marker, possessive particle, question marker, subject marker, topic marker.

particle, position of, 32, 53, 54

particles (in combinations), *asoko ni*, 70; *ato de*, 88; *hitori de*, 53; *issho ni*, 114; *made ni*, 137; *ni mo/ni wa*, 55; *ni tsuite*, 174; *no ato de*, 132; *no chikaku ni*, 68; *no mae ni*, 68, 132; *no naka ni*, 68; *no shita ni*, 69; *no temae de*, 142; *no ue ni*, 66

possessive particle, *no*, 19, 21, 26; in fractions, 41

predicate, repetition of, 183

question marker, *ka*, 20, 23; rising intonation, 26, 124

question word, how, 62, 103, 104, 145; how about, 95, 124; how long, 134, 146; how many, 46, 76, (minutes, hours, days) 146; how much, 39, 146; what, 27, 67, 80; what kind of, 96, 100; what number, 27, 29; what time, 32; when, 32, 36, 55; where, 48, 55, 80, 119; which, 44; which day, 32, 36; who, 21, 55, 67, whose, 29; why, 74, 76

relatives, 169

subject marker, *ga*, 55, 57, 66, 67, 120, 132; preference, 174

suffix, *goro*, 86, 89; *gurai*, 101, 145; *-jin*, 23; *-tachi*, 100; *-ya*, 45, 76; *-yōbi*, 33

this, that, that over there, 39, 40, 46, 70, 76

time, 31

topic marker, *wa*, 19, 20, 55, 66, 67, 124, 132, 174, 183

verb, dictionary (plain) form, 54; *-masen* 114, 115; *-mashō*, *-mashō ka*, 114, 115, 120; *-masu* form, 54, 133, 138, 146, 150, 155, 170; *-nai* form, 130, 155; present/past form, 20, 54, 56, 68, 79, 81, 110; present progressive, 159, 160, 170; past progressive, 159, 160; Regular I, Regular II, Irregular, 130, 131; *-tai desu*, 174, 175, 177; *-te* form, 130, 132, 133, 138, 145, 146, 150, 155; *-te imasu*, 168; *-te sumu/sutomeru*, 168, 169

verb, giving and receiving, 109; permission, 150; refusal, 155

verb, position of, 54

year, 63

HIRAGANA

<sup>1</sup> あ <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> い <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> う <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> え <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> お <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>
<sup>1</sup> か <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> き <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> く <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> け <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> こ <sup>2</sup>
<sup>1</sup> さ <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> し <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> す <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> せ <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> そ <sup>1</sup>
<sup>1</sup> た <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> ち <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> つ <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> て <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> と <sup>2</sup>
<sup>1</sup> な <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> に <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> ぬ <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> ね <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> の <sup>1</sup>
<sup>1</sup> は <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> ひ <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> ふ <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> へ <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> ほ <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>
<sup>1</sup> ま <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> み <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> む <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	<sup>1</sup> め <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> も <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>
<sup>1</sup> や <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>	(い)	<sup>1</sup> ゆ <sup>2</sup>	(え)	<sup>2</sup> よ <sup>1</sup>
<sup>1</sup> ら <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> り <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> る <sup>1</sup>	<sup>1</sup> れ <sup>2</sup>	<sup>1</sup> ろ <sup>1</sup>
<sup>1</sup> わ <sup>2</sup>	(い)	(う)	(え)	<sup>1</sup> を <sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>
<sup>1</sup> ん				

きや	きゆ	きよ
しや	しゆ	しよ
ちや	ちゆ	ちよ
にや	にゆ	によ
ひや	ひゆ	ひよ
みや	みゆ	みよ

りや	りゆ	りよ
----	----	----

が	ぎ	ぐ	げ	ご
ざ	じ	ず	ぜ	ぞ
だ	ぢ	づ	で	ど
ば	び	ぶ	べ	ぼ
ぱ	ぴ	ぷ	ぺ	ぽ

ぎや	ぎゆ	ぎよ
じや	じゆ	じよ

びや	びゆ	びよ
ぴや	ぴゆ	ぴよ

# KATAKANA

<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ア	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> イ	<sup>2</sup> <sub>3</sub> ウ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> エ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>3</sub> オ
<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> カ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> キ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ク	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ケ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> コ
<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> サ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> シ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ス	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> セ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ソ
<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> タ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> チ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ツ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> テ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ト
<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ナ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ニ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ヌ	<sup>2</sup> <sub>3</sub> ネ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ノ
<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ハ	<sup>2</sup> <sub>3</sub> ヒ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> フ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ヘ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ホ
<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> マ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ミ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ム	<sup>2</sup> <sub>3</sub> メ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> モ
<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ヤ	(イ)	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ユ	(エ)	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ヨ
<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ラ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> リ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ル	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> レ	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ロ
<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ワ	(イ)	(ウ)	(エ)	<sup>1</sup> <sub>2</sub> ヲ

<sup>1</sup><sub>2</sub>ン

キヤ	キユ	キヨ
シヤ	シユ	シヨ
チャ	チュ	チョ
ニヤ	ニユ	ニヨ
ヒヤ	ヒユ	ヒヨ
ミヤ	ミユ	ミヨ

リヤ リユ リヨ

ガ	ギ	グ	ゲ	ゴ
ザ	ジ	ズ	ゼ	ゾ
ダ	ヂ	ヅ	デ	ド
バ	ビ	ブ	ベ	ボ
パ	ピ	プ	ペ	ポ

ギヤ	ギユ	ギヨ
ジヤ	ジユ	ジヨ

ビヤ	ビユ	ビヨ
ピヤ	ピユ	ピヨ

## THE REVISED EDITION OF JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE

In the ten years since its publication, *Japanese for Busy People* has won acceptance worldwide as an effective, easy-to-understand textbook, either for classroom use or for independent study. In this new edition, numerous revisions and additions have been made, taking into account the comments and responses of both students and teachers who have been using the course.

In Book I, the revisions are directed at making the grammatical explanations easier to understand, while adding further explanations of points that students have difficulty with. Changes have also been made in favor of more natural practice sentences and dialogues. In addition, new appendices list the particles, interrogatives, and sentence patterns in the book, as well as the kanji introduced.

More fundamental revisions have been made to Book II, which has been expanded and divided into two volumes, Book II and Book III. The changes result in a smoother transition from Book I, make new grammatical elements clearer, and present more natural practice dialogues and exercise sentences.

---

## THE JAPANESE FOR BUSY PEOPLE COURSE

This concise course in natural Japanese is ideal for such students as businessmen whose aim is a working knowledge of the spoken language in everyday life. "Survival Japanese for Adults," as it might be called, gets to the heart of the language without recourse to childish or classroom-only Japanese.

Vocabulary and grammar have been limited to about one-third that usually encountered in beginner courses, and words and patterns that students will find immediately useful are emphasized.

The thirty lessons are composed of dialogues, notes on grammar, and vocabulary, exercises and quizzes. In addition to developing verbal fluency, by the time the student is one-third the way through Book I he will have mastered the two phonetic syllabaries of Japanese.

**THE AUTHORS:** Registered with Japan's Ministry of Education as a nonprofit organization in 1977, the Association for Japanese-Language Teaching (AJALT) was established to meet the needs of people who are not necessarily specialists on Japan but who wish to communicate effectively in Japanese. Along with private and group instruction at all levels, AJALT carries on research, develops teaching materials, and trains teachers of Japanese. Its instructors are often called on to provide their services and expertise to government agencies, foundations, and educational institutions. In 1992 the association was awarded the Japan Foundation Special Prize.



ISBN 4-7700-1882-7

定価2,900円(本体2,816円)

ISBN4-7700-1882-7 C0081 P2900E